

A Rel. d. 69 . 10

Compleat System  
OF  
GRAMMAR  
*English and Latin:*

WHEREIN

That Most Excellent *A R T*  
is *Plainly, Fully* and distinctly Taught, and pra-  
ctically Manag'd thro' every *P A R T* thereof.

IN

A Method which renders it Easie to all  
Capacities, and by the Use whereof the Lear-  
ner may attain to the perfect Knowledge of the  
*L A T I N* Tongue in less than one quarter of the  
Time usually spent therein, and those who have lost  
their *Latin* may hereby soon repair it.

Whereunto is Annexed

I. Rules for Construing, Composing and ~~Reading~~ Latin  
according to the Ciceronean Stile.

II. The Doctrin of English Particles, whereby Youth  
are enabled to express themselves Pertinently, Elegantly  
and Fully.

Dedicated to His Highness the

DUKE of GLOUCESTER.

L O N D O N :

Printed for *D. Walwyn*, at the Three Leggs in the  
Poultry over against the Stocks-Market, 1690.

~~17-298~~

'73... 7505



---

To His Highness

WILLIAM

DUKE of GLOUCESTER

**B**EING sensible (Illustrious *Sir*), That as Princes themselves, so their Time is superlatively Precious; I therefore thought I could not better employ mine than in such Considerations as might lessen the Expence *thereof* in Your *Grammar* Study; A Science which undoubtedly Your Highness begins to think necessary to accomplish a Prince: Undisciplin'd

*The Epistle Dedicatory.*

*Words* being as useles as undisciplin'd *Armies*, and of worse Consequence if the Mind be preferable to the Body. And therefore it is that the Great Master of *War* trains You up first in Letters, well knowing that Government should begin in the Mind before it Extendeth over Nations.

Accept therefore (*hopeful Prince*) the following Treatise, which professeth utmost Service; And if it be of the same Mind with its Author is,

Your Highnesses

Most Humble, Faithful

and Devoted Servant

CLARE.

---

ADVERTISEMMENT  
TO THE  
READER

Concerning the following

GRAMMAR.

1. **I**T is English and Latin ab fere usq;  
ad mala, and I know no Reason  
why a Boy should not be enabled to give La-  
tin Rules in the Examination of a Lecture  
for the two first Parts of Grammar, as well  
as the last two: Therefore it will be sufficient  
for the Youth to learn memoriter the Latine  
only, the chiefest Design of the Version is to  
illustrate them thro' the dark and as yet un-  
known paths of a Strange Language, and  
therefore the Examples to each Rule are to be  
considered in the Latin Collum, the two Lan-  
guages not alway runing parallel.

2. This Grammar is Dialoguised Exa-  
minandi causa and every Responsum is



## Advertisment

again capable of Subdivisions for the better inculcating the Matter into the apprehension and memory of Lads, enabling them to Question one another in all the Parts of Grammar.

3. Every Subject is common plac'd memoria gratia, and in Syntax three Exceptions are not found, whereby it appears that if the Title be remembred the Case is at hand.

4. The quantities of Syllables are plac'd in the first Part of Grammar whereunto they belong, because pronounciation is a necessary attendant upon Letter, and Boys must be kept up to a sweet, clear, full, plain, distinct, and due pronouncing; and herein much will be found new, and worthy observation.

5. All the usual Stops, and Marks common in Authors, are also hereunto adjoyned, with their various uses.

6. The Figures which belong unto each Part of Grammar are immediately annexed thereunto.

7. Declensions and Genders are taught by the ending of the Nominative Case, and Conjugations by the Theme.

8. Both

## To the Reader.

8. Both in Nouns and Verbs the moveable Parts are so fixed in Tables, that Lads will easily fix them in their Memory.

9. They are practically apply'd in such a Method, that the most stupid Boy with great Chearfulness will covet to be imployed in them, provided the Form be indigitated to him, and no more than one Substantive, one Adjective, or one Tense, be at first imposed.

10. Rules for forming the Passive voice from the Active, and many other things in the syncritical Method.

11. Rules for compound Verbs in changing, loosing, or taking Letters with other necessary Observations.

12. An easie and pleasant Method to improve Lads in computing Verbs, or the way of teaching them to speak Latin, &c. And here the Master hath a large and pleasant Field to walk in, both for his own, and Scholars diversion, all other diversities of Grammar, being but as so many Lanes leading therein.

13. The

## Advertisment, &c.

13. *The practical Method of applying the Rules of Etymology and Syntax in the Methodical Examination of a Sentence.*

14. *The Method of varying Sentences whereby Youth are enabled to express their Conception several ways.*

15. *The Method of varying, using and applying Phrases.*

16. *The Musical Notes are added to every sort of Verse in Prosody, directing the Elevation and Depression of the Voice, &c.*

17. *The Method of Examining Verse.*

18. *Rules for Construing, Composing and disposing Latin Words according to the Ciceronean Stile.*

19. *The Doctrine of Particles, whereby Youth may be enabled to express themselves pertinently, elegantly and fully.*



# A Compleat System of GRAMMAR.

## The Entrance.

J. **H**OW fare you *Martin*; how have you done since I saw you last?

M. Very well. God be praised, how do you find your self?

J. The best in the World, I humbly thank God, and you also.

M. Very well: We have now complemented long enough, pray tell me what School you go to?

J. I learn of one----

M. And what art do you learn?

J. I am conversant in Grammar.

M. Is Grammar an Art?

J. Yes, And the most excellent of all the Liberal Sciences.

M. How many Liberal Arts are there?

J. There are Seven Liberal Sciences, Grammar, Logick, Rhetorick, Musick, Arithmetick, Geometry and Astronomy.

M. What is Grammar?

J. Grammar is an Art of writing and speaking well.

M. How many parts hath Grammar?

J. Grammar has Four Parts, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

### Of Orthography.

M. What is Orthography?

J. Orthography, the first part of Grammar, is that which teacheth to write Words with proper Letters, and also to pronounce Syllables with due time.

## Introitus.

J. **U**T vales *Martine*, quâ usus es valetudine ex quo aspectu fruebar?

M. Perquam optime Deo gratias: Ut te habes?

J. Optime si quis alius in toto terrarum orbe, gratias humillime Deo, etiam tibi reddo.

M. Bene res habet, jam satis ceremoniæ *Johannes*. Dic quæso quam tu frequentas Scholam?

J. Sub cuiuslâ --auspiciis erudior.

M. Et in quâ arte versaris?

J. In Grammaticâ versatus sum.

M. Estne Grammatica ars?

J. Maxime & omnium artium liberalium est præstantissima.

M. Quot igitur sunt liberales artes?

J. Septem sunt liberales artes, Grammatica, Dialectica, Rhetorica, Musica, Arithmetica, Geometria, Astronomia.

M. Quid est Grammatica?

J. Grammatica est ars recte scribendi, & bene loquendi.

M. Quot sunt partes Grammaticæ?

J. Partes Grammaticæ sunt quatuor, Orthographia, Etymologia, Syntaxis & Prosodia.

### De Orthographia.

M. Quid est Orthographia?

J. Orthographia prima pars Grammaticæ, est qua ratio formandi literis propriis docetur, & proferendi syllabis etiam cum tempore recto.

# *A Compleat System of Grammar.* *Of Letters.*

M. What is a Letter?

J. A Letter is the least part of a word, and in the Latine Tongue there are twenty five, to wit, A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

M. But why is not W. named here?

J. Because W. is never written in the Latine Tongue, the sound thereof being supplied by U; as, I perswade.

Altho H be written, it hath not the power of a Letter, being only a note or mark of aspiration.

And K Y Z are not used in purely Latine, but in foreign words only.

M. Why are the Letters written two manner of ways, viz. in great and small Characters?

J. Because with Capital Letters must begin Periods, Proper Names, and also the Names of Arts, Dignities, Feasts, Plays, Offices, Titles, Vices, Vertues, also every Verse, and whatsoever we pay a particular respect unto.

Also the English pronoun I, and the Interjection O, are always written with Capital Letters.

M. What do the Capitals I. H. S. signifie, with points put between them?

J. I. signifies Jesus. S. Stands for The Saviour; and H. of Human Creatures.

M. By what Rule?

J. Because if Capital Letters are thus written alone, or but few together, they either signifie the ancient abbreviature,

or they signifie proper names, as C may stand for Charles.

## *De Literis.*

M. Quid est Litera?

J. Litera est minima vocis nota & apud Latinos viginti quinque sunt in usu, viz. a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

M. Quare autem non usum est W?

J. Quia W. lingua Romanâ non scriptum: sonum ejus per u actum ut, suadeo, (non) swadeo.

Et si scribitur H, literæ tamen potestatem non habet, quia est nota aspirationis.

K Y Z etiam Latinis dictionibus nunquam admiscuntur, quin peregrinis tantum.

M. Quare Literæ bifariam pinguntur majusculis & minusculis characteribus?

J. Quia majusculis inchoantur periodi, propria etiam nomina, & Artium, Dignitatum Festorum, Ludorum, Officium, Titulorum, Virtutum, Vitium quilibet etiam versus; & quæ magnam habent Emphasin.

Item Pronomen Anglicanum I, & interjectio O, literis majusculis semper pinguntur.

M. Quæ significant I. H. S. cum punctis interpositis?

J. I. Significat Jesus. H. Hominum & S. Salvator.

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Quia si literæ majusculæ ita scribantur solum: vel significant antiquum aliquod compendium.

Vel Prænomen, ut, C pro Carolus.

Or



Or they signifie Numbers, as I signifies One. X Ten. L Fifty. C a Hundred. D Five Hundred. and M a Thousand, 1698.

M. Why is I in Six VI written on the right hand of the V?

J. Because a lesser Number placed at the right hand of a greater, adds the value of the lesser to the greater.

But if it be placed on the left hand it abates its own value from the greater, as Four IV.

M. How are the letters divided?

J. Into Vowels and Consonants.

M. What is a Vowel?

J. A Vowel is a letter which can make a perfect sound of it self.

M. How many vowels are there?

J. There are six vowels, a. e. i. o. u. y. all other letters are consonants.

M. Can any thing be made of vowels alone, without help of the consonants?

J. Yes, Dipthongs are made of Vowels.

M. What is a Dipthong?

J. A Dipthong is a two-fold, or double sound of one Syllable.

M. How many Dipthongs are there?

J. There are Eight Dipthongs, namely, æ. ai. au. ei. eu. œ. oi. ui. or yi.

M. Give an Example in æ? Reward.

Give an Example in ai? a Sea-Crab.

Give an Example in au? Gold.

Give an Example in ei? Alas.

Give an Example in eu? Europe.

Give an Example in œ? a Supper.

Give an Example in oi? Troy.

Give an Example in ui? a Harpy

Aut Numeros, ut I. Pro Unus. V. Quinque. X. Decem. L. Quinquaginta. C. Centum. D. Quingenti & M. Mille, ut MDCXCVIII.

M. I. in Sex VI. quare dextrorsum scribitur?

J. Quia minor numerus dextrorsum locatus, quantitatem minoris majori addit.

Sed si finistrorum locetur ejus quantitatem à majore deducit ut, quatuor IV.

M. Quomodo dividuntur literæ?

J. In Vocales & Consonantes.

M. Quid est Vocalis?

J. Vocalis est Litera quæ per se sonum integrum efficere potest.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

J. Vocales sunt Sex, a. e. i. o. u. y. cæteræ sunt Consonantes.

M. Potestne aliquid componi tantummodo ex Vocalibus sine adminiculo consonantium?

J. Imo ex Vocalibus fiunt Dipthongi.

M. Quid est Dipthongus?

J. Dipthongus est binus vel geminus sonus unius Syllabæ.

M. Quot sunt Dipthongi?

J. Octo sunt Dipthongi, videlicet æ. ai. au. ei. eu. œ. oi. ui. vel yi.

M. Redde Exemplum in æ? Præmium.

Da Exemplum in ai? Maia.

Exemplum in au? Aurum.

Exemplum in ei? Hei.

Exemplum in eu? Europa.

Exemplum in œ? Cœna.

Exemplum in oi? Troia.

Exemplum in ui? Harpyia.



M. Now unfold or explain the definition of a Consonant.

J. A Consonant is a Letter which must needs be joined with a Vowel, to make a Sound or Syllable.

M. How are Consonants divided?

J. Consonants are divided into Mutes and half Vowels.

M. How many Mutes are there?

J. Nine, b. c. d. f. g. k. p. q. t.

M. Why are they called Mutes?

J. Because by themselves they are still, and have no proper sound. But when they are pronounced, they seem to have Vowels post-poned.

M. How many half-Vowels are there?

Nine, l. m. n. r. s. x. z. jod. ve, of which l. m. n. r. s. are called liquids, because the sound seems as tho' it were softned and melted.

x. z. j. are double Consonants, because they seem to have the force and power of Two Consonants.

M. Why are they called half Vowels?

J. Because they are Consonants which make a sound by themselves, as tho' a Vowel were præ-poned.

### *Of Syllables.*

M. What is made of the Letters?

J. A Syllable is made of the Letters.

M. What is a Syllable?

J. A Syllable is the discovery of a perfect sound at one motion of the Breath, and may consist of one or more Letters, as, the mind.

M. Explicet jam definitionem Consonantis?

J. Consonans est Litera quæ tantum cum vocali syllabam componere potest.

M. Quomodo dividuntur consonæ?

J. Consonantes dividuntur in mutas & semi-vocales.

M. Quot sunt Mutæ?

J. Novem, b. c. d. f. g. k. p. q. t.

M. Quare dicuntur Mutæ?

J. Quia per se obmutescunt, & proprium sonum non habent. Sed dum proferuntur vocales sibi post habitas habere videntur.

M. Quot sunt semivocales?

J. Novem, l. m. n. r. s. x. z. j. v. ex quibus l. m. n. r. s. vocantur liquidæ quia sonus aliquando emollitur, & tanquam liquefcit.

x. z. j. duplices sunt consonantes, quia duarum consonantium quasi vim & potestatem habent.

M. Quare dicuntur semi-vocales?

J. Quia consonæ sunt quæ per se sonum efficiunt tanquam vocalis dimidium sonum habent.

### *De Syllabis.*

M. Ex literis quid fit?

J. Ex literis fit syllaba.

M. Quid est syllaba?

J. Syllaba est integri soni comprehensio unius literæ pluriumve spirituum uno motu, ut, a-ni-mus.

M.

M. How do you spell *Josephus*?

J. Jo-se-phus, *Joseph*.

M. Why is it spelt with J. not G.

J. Because G sounds hard before a, o, u, like the Greek Letter Gamma.

M. Why is *Jose-phus* spelt with ph, (not) *Jose-fus* with an f?

J. Because ph always sounds like f, and ch like k.

M. Why *Jo-sephus* (not) *Josephus*?

J. Because a Consonant set between two Vowels, belongs to the following Vowel, and begins that syllable, but x belongs to the former.

M. Why do you write *Generosus*, a Gentleman, with G not with J?

J. Because G before e i y sounds soft like the Hebrew letter jod.

M. How do you spell *annus* a Year?

J. *An-nus*. M. By what rule?

J. If the same consonant be doubled, the first ends the former, and the latter begins the following syllable.

M. How are the letters divided in *Princeps* a *Prince*?

J. Prin-ceps (not) princ-eps, because consonants which cannot be joined in the beginning of a word must be parted in the middle.

M. How do you spell *tristis* sad?

J. *Tri-stis* (not) *tris-tis*, because consonants which can be joined in the beginning of a word, must not be parted in the middle.

M. Rehearse a Catalogue then of those consonants which happening together must never be parted?

M. *Josephus* quomodo literas formas? J. *Jo-se-phus*.

M. *Josephus* cum J (non) G quare?

J. Quia G ante a o u duriter sonat sicut Gamma Græce, ut Gallus.

M. Quare *Josephus* cum ph (non) *Jose-fus* cum f?

J. Quia ph sicut f semper sonat, & ch sicut k.

M. Quare *Jo-sephus* (non) *Josephus*?

J. Quia consona inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertinet, x vero ad priorem syllabam spectat.

M. Quare scribis *Generosus* cum G (non) *Jenerosus* cum J.

J. Quia G ante e i y mollitur sonat sicut jod Hebræum.

M. *Annus*, quomodo literas formas?

J. *An-nus*. M. Quâ regulâ?

J. Si consona geminetur prior ad priorem, & posterior ad posteriorem syllabam attinet.

M. *Princeps* unde dividuntur literæ?

J. Prin-ceps (non) princ-eps; quia consonantes quæ in principio dictionis sociari non possunt, nec in medio conjugantur.

M. *Tristis* unde formantur literæ?

J. Tri-stis (non) Tris-tis, quia consonantes quæ principio dictionis conjungi possunt in medio etiam connectuntur.

M. Recita igitur Catalogum earum consonantium quæ nunquam sunt seperandæ?

J. Ego



## A Compleat System of Grammar.

J. Yes withal my heart.

Some of these may seem uncouth to the English, yet Authority justifies them, however Use or Custom may prevail to the contrary.

In the English dw, sw, tw.

M. Why *ad-est* he is here (not) *a-dest*.

J. Because in words compounded, that part compounding, and the part compounded, must be parted.

M. Why is *cor*, the heart, writ with *c* not *k*?

J. Because *c* before *a o u* sounds like *k*, and before *e i y* it is every where sounded like *f*, with a hissing as, sure, meat, a Swan.

M. Why is *lectio* a lesson, writ with *tio* (not) *xio*, *chio* nor *ccio*?

J. Because *ti* before a vowel usually sounds like *fi*.

M. Doth *ti* sound every where like *fi* when a vowel follows?

J. No, for it keeps its own proper sound in Greek words made Latine, as, Government.

Also when *ti* begins a word, it keeps its own sound, as, a turbant.

Also in paragogical infinitives, as, to be sent.

Also when *f* goes immediately before *t* as, a question.

And in *vitium*, the Genitive Case plural from *vitis* a vine, to distinguish it from *vitium* vice.

M. Why do you write *audacia* with *cia* (not) *fia*, nor yet with *tia*?

J. Because derivative words are spelt with the same letters which their primitives are.

M. From whence is *audacia* derived?

J. From *audax*, *audacis*, bold.

J. Ego vero ac lubens.

bl, bd, br, ch, cl, cm, cn, cr, cf, dr, dm, fl, fr, gl, gn, gr, kn, mn, ph, plth, pl, pr, ps, pt, rh, sc, scr, sh, sk, sl, sm, sn, sp, sph, spl, spr, sq, st, str, th, thr, tl, tm, tn, tr, & Anglice dw, fw, tw.

M. *Ad-est* (non) *a-dest* quare?

J. Quia in compositis dictionibus pars singula ex altera est separanda.

M. *Cor* cum *c* (non) *k* quare?

J. Quia *c* ante *a o u* sicut *k*, sonat & ante *e i y* tanquam *f*, cum sibilo ubique proferetur, ut, certus, cibus, cygnus.

M. Quare *lectio* scribitur cum *tio* (non) cum *xio*, nec *chio*, neq; *ccio*?

J. Quia *ti* sequente vocali fere sonat sicut *fi*.

M. Sonatne *ti* ubique tanquam *fi* dum sequeretur vocali?

J. Non, nam retinet proprium suum sonum in Græcis dictionibus ut, Politia.

In principio etiam dictionis, ut, tiaras.

Item Infinitivis paragogicis, ut, mittier pro mitti.

Similiter quando *f*, præponitur *t*, ut, quæstio.

Et in Genitivo vitium à vitis distinctionis gratià à Nominativo vitium.

M. Quare scribis *audacia* cum *cia* (non) cum *fia*, nec *tia*?

J. Quia derivativa ad eundem modum primitivorum suas literas formant.

M. *Audacia* unde dicitur?

J. *Audacia* derivatur ex *audax*, *audacis*.

of



*Of the Quantity of Syllables.*

M. What is to be regarded in pronouncing Syllables?

J. Quantity is to be observed.

M. What is quantity?

J. Quantity is the time, or space, or delay, wherein it is pronounced.

M. How manifold is quantity?

J. Quantity is threefold, either it is long, marked over the vowel thus (—).

Or it is short, marked thus (˘).

Or else it is common, that is, either long or short, as we please, and is noted over the vowel thus (:).

M. Of what quantity is e in ventus?

J. e in ventus is long, because a Vowel before two Consonants, or before a double consonant is always long by Position, as, an axle-tree, to take after the Father, the wind, I am above the reach of fortunes malice; in which Verse a in major stands before jod, and o before r and s. &c.

M. Why then is a in patris common?

J. A vowel before a mute is made common, if a liquid follow the mute, as, swift or speedy.

M. Of what quantity is e in Deus?

J. One vowel before another in divers syllables of the same word is always short, as thine, a Son.

1. Except the Genitive and Dative cases singular of the Fifth Declension, when e between the two i's is long, as of, or to a day.

2. Except Genitive cases which

*De quantitate Syllabarum.*

M. In proferendis syllabis quid est considerandum?

J. Quantitas est notanda.

M. Quid est quantitas?

J. Quantitas tempus est vel illud spacium sive mora quâ syllaba profertur.

M. Quotuplex est quantitas?

J. Triplex, Syllaba vel longa (—) est ut, amâre.

Vel brevis, ut lēgere (˘).

Sive communis modo quasi longa modo brevis, ut pātris vel pātris prout volumus & hoc modo notatur (:)

M. e in ventus, cujus quantitatatis?

J. e in ventus producitur, quia vocalis ante duas consonantes aut duplicem ubique positurâ longa est, ut āxis, pātrizo, vētus.

Mājor sūm quā cui pōssit fortuna nocere.

M. a in patris communis est quare?

J. Vocalis ante mutam sequente liquidâ communis redditur ut, volucris.

M. e in Deus cujus quantitatatis?

J. Vocalis ante alteram in diversis syllabis ejusdem dictionis ubique brevis est, ut tēus, filiū.

1. Excipe Genitivos & Dativos quintæ Declinationis e inter geminum i longa fit, ut diēi.

2. Excipe Genitivos in ius, ut  
end

end in ius, as, of one, where i is common.

Altho in alterius of another, i is always short. And in alius of another, i is always long.

3. Except i in fio, to be made or done, which is always long, unless er follows the i, as, I could be made, to be done.

4. One vowel before another in Greek words made Latine, are now and then long, as, a man's name,

M. What quantity is au in aurum, Gold?

J. Every Diphthong, also two Syllables contracted into one, and syllables with an angle over them are long, as, &c. to whom, of the Parents, they have been.

But if a vowel follow, the Diphthong is short, as, præaltus, very high or deep.

M. Of what quantity is a in, &c. a friend.

J. Derivative and compound words have the same time which their primitives and simples have, as, redāmo to love again.

Except, &c. a maid un-married, and a bride-maid from, &c. to be married, and also, &c. to swear solemnly, falsely, from juro.

M. Of what quantity is the Preposition de of, or concerning?

J. Of the Prepositions these are always long ā, ē, dē, sē, unless a vowel immediately follow them.

2. The compounding Preposition di is also long, unless in, &c. to separate, and eloquent.

3. Pro also is long, except in these, &c. a storm, profane, truly, to speak forth, to proceed, to profess, to run away, banished,

unius, ubi i communis reperitur.

Licet in alterius est semper breve. Et in alius semper longum.

3. Excipe i in Fio quod semper longum, nisi sequatur er, ut fieram, fieri.

4. Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit, ut Orphæus.

M. Au in aurum quæ quantitas?

J. Omnis Diphthongus, etiam syllaba ex duabus contracta, & syllaba circumflexa longa sunt, ut cūi, parentū, fuērunt.

Tamen sequente vocali Diphthongus corripitur ut, præaltus.

M. a in amicus cujus quantitas?

J. Derivativa & composita primitivorum, & simplicium quantitatem sequuntur, ut redāmo.

Excipiendi sunt innūba & pronūba à nubo, de jero etiam & pe jero à juro.

M. De præpositio cujus quantitas?

J. Ex præpositionibus hæ ubique producuntur, ā, ē, dē, sē, nisi sequitur imediate vocalis.

2. Dī etiam longum nisi in dirimo, & disertus.

3. Pro quoque producitur, præter his præcella, præfanus, præfecto, præfari, præficiscor, præfiteor, præfugio, præfugus, præfun-

high

high or deep, a great Grandson, stalk or offspring, a Prophet, to drink to, to make haste, and to wanton.

4. These are common, &c. to run abroad, to waste idly, to nourish or enlarge, to drive off, to keep off.

5. The rest of the Prepositions are short, if position permit.

M. Of what quantity is *e* in *legi*?

J. Every perfect tense and supine have the first syllable long, as *lēgi* I have read, *mōtum* to move.

These are excepted, &c. to cleave, I have drank, given, cut, stood, suffered. To stir up, give, besmear, may or can, suppose, rush, sow and permit.

M. Why is *e* in *cēcidi* short?

J. Verbs which double the first syllable of the perfect tense, make the first syllable short, as, &c. I have fallen, learned, deceived, bitten, broken wind backwards, weighed, touched, clipped, beat or brayed.

M. I demand the quantity of *i* in *claudastinus*?

J. Adjectives ending in *inus* and *osus* make the last syllable save one long.

1. Yet these following Adjectives have the last Syllable but one short, &c. of linen, of the cedar-tree, of to morrow, enduring long, of beech, of this year, of an olive-tree, two days hence, of old, of the evening.

2. So also Adjectives signifying the matter, or things made of Metals, as, &c. of chrysal, of myrrh, are short.

M. Of what quantity is *a* in, *clamus* we give.

*claus*, *prōnepos*, *prōpago*, *prōpheta*. *prōpino*, *prōpero* & *prōtervus*.

4. *Communia* sunt *procurro*, *profundo*, *propago*, *propello*, *propulso*.

5. *Reliquæ præpositiones corripuntur si positio sinat.*

M. *e* in *legi* cujus quantitas?

J. *Omne præteritum & supinum priorem habent longam ut, mōtum.*

*Excipiendi sunt fīdi à findo bībi, dēdi, scīdi, stēti, tūli, cītum à cieo, dātum, lītum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum & situm.*

M. *e* in *cēcidi*, brevis est, quare?

J. *Primum præteriti geminantia primam itidem brevem habent, ut, cēcidi, dīdici, fēfelli, mōmordi, pepēdi, pēpendi, tēti-gi, tōtondi & tūtudi.*

M. *i* in *claudastinus* quantitatem rogo?

J. *Adjectiva in inus & osus penultimam producant.*

1. *Hæc tamen sequentia penultimam corripunt, carbasinus, cedrinus, crastinus, diutinus, faginus, hornotinus, oleaginus, perendinus, pristinus & ferotinus.*

2. *Sic etiam materialia, sive metallorum à nominibus formata, ut chrysellinus, myrrhinus sunt brevia.*

M. *a* in *clamus* cujus quantitas?

C

J. The



The distinguishing Letters in the Conjugations must be observed, namely *ā* in the first conjugation is always long, as *ātote*.

*ē* in the second conjugation is always long, as *ēmus, ētote, ēnt*.

Except a vowel immediately follows *e* for then it is short, as *ēat*.

*ē* in the third conjugation is short before *r*, as *ērem, ēretis*.

Except the third person plural in the perfect tense of the active voice, and the second person singular in the future tense of the indicative mood.

*e* in the third conjugation is always long if *r* follow it not.

*i* in the fourth conjugation is always long, as *īmus, ītote*.

Unless a vowel immediately follows *i*, and then *i* is short.

Almost all other syllables are either long or short by use and authority of Authors.

Except they be the syllables which increase in the Genitive case singular, or such as end words.

The increasing syllable of the Genitive Case is for the most part long or short, according to this Draught.

Syllables are long in such as in the Genitive increase in *ā*, as *ācis*, except, &c. a torch, and some Greek words.

*ālis*, except, &c. a man's name and salt in.

*ānis* also, and in

*āris*, except, &c. a Sun-beam, the liver, sweet-wine, equal.

*āsīs* also and in

*ātīs* from *as*, except, *anas* a duck or drake.

Syllables increasing by *ē* in the Genitive case are long in

J. Literæ characteristicae conjugationibus semper sunt notandæ, viz. *ā* primâ conjugatione est semper longum, ut, *ābo, ārem*.

*ē* secundâ conjugatione semper est longum, ut *ēmus, ēbamus*.

Excipe vocalem proxime sequentem *e*, ut *ēamus, ēatis, ēant*.

*ē* tertiâ conjugatione ante *r*, est breve, ut *ērem, ēro, ēre*.

Excipe *ērunt, ēre*, perfecto activæ plurali; & *ēris* vel *ēre* futuro passivo indicativi singularis.

*e* tertiâ non sequente *r* est semper longum, ut *ēbam, ēbar*.

*i* in quartâ conjugatione est semper longum, ut *īmus, īte, īre*.

Nisi sequitur immediate vocali ut, *īam, īatis, īamur, īant*.

Omnes ferè reliquæ syllabæ vel longæ, vel breves sunt usu, & autoritate.

Nisi sint syllabæ Genitivo crescentes, five finales.

Syllaba crescens Genitivo perunque vel longa, vel brevis, est secundum schema sequente.

Syllabæ sunt longæ cujusmodi crescentibus in *ā*, ut in

*ācis*, nisi *fax* & quædam Græcæ.

*ālis*, præter *Annibal* & *sal* in.

*ānis* etiam & in

*āris* nisi *jubar, hepar, nectar* & par.

*āsīs* etiam & in

*ātīs* ex *as* nisi *anas anātis*.

Syllabæ crescentes per *ē* Genitivo longæ sunt in *ēcis*

ēcis, except nex destruction, in  
ēdis, exc. pes a foot, with its  
Compounds in

ēgis except grex a flock, in  
ēnis also, and in  
ētis except, &c. a fir-tree, a ram,  
a dullard, an expounder, a wall,  
a coverlid, and those which end in  
es short.

ī is long in such as increase in  
īris, also and in

īcis from ix and trix except,  
&c. an addition, a cup, the hip,  
fern, an arch, a hedge-hog, a wa-  
ter serpent, and avein swollen.

ō is long in such as increase in  
ōcis, except over-hasty, and the  
Names of Countrymen. in  
ōdis except a trivet in  
ōnis except some foreign words  
ōtis except endued with, unable  
ōris from os and or, except  
wheat, a tree, the Sea, marble,  
mindful, strength and some *Greek*  
words increasing by ō short.

ū is long in such as increase in  
ūdis, except pecus small cattle in  
ūtis also, and in

ūris, except a diviner, tame, bran,  
a devourer, muttering, a greedy  
bird.

Syllables are short in such as  
increase in ā, namely in

ābis, and also in  
ādis, and likewise in  
ātis, from a, as a Theme.

Syllables increasing in ě are  
short in these

ěmis, and also in

ěri, and in the verb ěris, thou  
shalt be, and some *Greek* nouns  
besides aer the air, and æther the  
skie.

Syllables increasing in ĭ are short  
in these following, namely

īcis from ex, and also

ēcis nisi nex nēcis in  
ēdis, nisi pes, cum compositis  
in

ēgis, nisi grex grēgis in  
ēnis, etiam & in

ētis. nisi abies, aries, hebes, in-  
terpres, paries, seges, teges & quæ  
in es brevi.

In ī crescentes sunt longæ in  
īris, etiam & in

īcis de ix & trix, præter appen-  
dix, calix, coxendix, filix, fornix,  
hiftrix, natrrixq; varix.

In ō crescentes sunt longæ in  
ōcis nisi præcox et nomina ru-  
sticorum in

ōdis, præter tripas tripōdis in  
ōnis, nisi quædam peregrina per ō  
ōtis, præter compos & impos

ōris ex os & or, excipe ador, ar-  
bor, æquor, marmor, memor, ro-  
bur, et quædam Græca per ō cre-  
scentia.

Crescentes per ū longæ sunt, in  
ūdis, nisi pecus, pecūdis, in  
ūtis, etiam & in

ūris, præter augur, cicur, surfur,  
ligur, murmur, vultur.

Syllabæ sunt breves cujus mo-  
di crescentibus in ā, videlicet

ābis, etiam & in

ādis, item & in

ātis ex a ut, thema themātis

Syllabæ crescentes in ě sunt bre-  
ves in his

ěmis etiam & in

ěri etiam verbum ěris & quæ-  
dam Græca rum aer & æther

Syllabæ crescentes in ĭ sequen-  
tibus sunt breves, viz.

īcis de ex, etiam & in

idis, except the Nymph, and a Cities Names.

igis, and also in

inis, except a dolphin, and two Cities names.

iri, and also in

itis, except a spear, a samnite

ivis, and also in ius

Nouns increasing by o are short in the following syllables. in

obis, and also in

ogis, likewise in

opis, except a gnat, and the Droppe

oris from ur and us, except a crafty fellow, and a mans name.

ovis also, as bōs bōvis, an ox

ū is short in such as these, which increase in

ūcis, except Pollux, a mans name

ūgis, and also in

ūlis, likewise in

ūpis, in like manner in ūris

Nouns increasing by y are short in the following syllables in

ybis, and also in

ycis, except a silk-worm

ygis, and also in yris.

*Of the quantity of final or ending Syllables.*

M. of what quantity is a in, &c. a subject, or theme.

J. Words ending in a are long.

Words excepted are, &c. suppose, even so, because, and every case that ends in a except ablatives of the first declension, as, pennā, with a pen.

And the vocatives of Greek Nouns, which in the Nominative end in as.

Common are Nouns of number which end in ginta, as, thirty.

M. Of what quantity is e in, halec a herring.

J. The vowel before c final is long.

idis, nisi Crenis, Psophis

igis, etiam & in

inis, nisi delphis, Salamis, Trachis.

iri, etiam & in

itis, nisi quiris, samnis in

ivis, etiam & in

ius,

Crescentes in ō sunt breves sequentibus in

obis etiam & in

ogis item & in

opis nisi conops & hydrops

oris ex ur & us, nisi cercops, et cyclops

ovis, etiam ut bos, bōvis.

Crescentes in u, sunt breves sequentibus. in

ūcis, nisi pollux, pollūcis, in

ūgis, etiam & in

ūlis, item in

ūpis, similiter in ūris.

Crescentes in y sunt breves sequentibus. in

ybis, item & in

ycis, præter bombyx, in

ygis, etiam & in yris.

*De ultimarum Syllabarum quantitate.*

M. a in thema cujus quantitas?

J. Finita in a producantur excipienda sunt putā, itā quā & omnes casus in a; præter ablativos primæ declinationis.

Et vocativos Græcorum in as, ut Nominativo Thomas, Vocativo Thomā.

Communia sunt numeralia in ginta, ut triginta.

M. e in halec cujus quantitas?

J. Vocalis ante c finale producit. Short



Short are &c. until, milk, nor.  
Common are &c. do it, this  
Masc. & Neut. provided hoc be not  
the ablative case.

M. Of what quantity is i in  
boni good?

J. Words ending in i have that  
i long.

Short are &c. unless, as  
though, also Datives and Ablatives  
of Greekish Nouns as, a womans  
and a mans name.

Common are &c. there, to me,  
to himself, to thee, where.

M. Of what quantity is e in  
splen the spleen?

J. The vowel before n final is  
long.

Short are &c. or else, but yet,  
perhaps, or perchance, yet, but yet.

Also in with its compounds as,  
&c. from thenceforth, and there-  
fore.

Nouns also ending in en in the  
Nominative whose Genitive have  
inis short.

Likewise words which are libel  
by the figure Apocope as, &c. in-  
stead of mene, vidine.

And Greek words ending in on  
by the short o, also in and yn by  
i and y and an from Nominative  
cases ending in a.

M. Of what quantity is as in  
nefas?

J. Words ending in as make the  
a long. Short are Greek words  
having dos in the Genitive case sin-  
gular as, arcas an Arcadian, where-  
unto add anas a duck or drake.

Also Accusatives plural of such  
as increase in the Genitive case  
singular as, &c. a Princess, *Phyllis*.

M. Of what quantity is es in  
facies a face?

J. Words ending in es have e  
long.

*Brevia sunt donec, lac, nec.*

*Communia sunt fac, hic, & hoc  
modo casus non fit ablativus.*

M. i in boni cujus quantitat-  
is?

J. Finita in i sunt longa.

*Brevia sunt nisi, quasi, Dativi  
etiam et ablativi Græcorum ut;  
Phyllidi, Daphni.*

*Communia sunt ibi, mihi, sibi,  
tibi, ubi.*

M. e in splen cujus quantita-  
tis?

J. Vocalis ante n finitum pro-  
ducitur,

*Brevia sunt an, attamen, fors an  
forsitan, tamen, veruntamen.*

*in etiam cum compositis ut;  
exin, proin.*

*Item nomina in en quorum  
Genitivus inis correptum habent.*

*Similiter quæ per Apocopen  
castrantur ut; men' vidin'.*

*Et Græca in on per o breve in  
& yn per i & y, an etiam a nomi-  
nativis in a.*

M. as in nefas cujus quantitat-  
is?

J. Finita in as sunt longa.

*Brevia sunt Græca Genitivo  
singulari dos habentia ut, arcas,  
quibus adde anas.*

*Accusativi etiam plurales cu-  
jusmodi genitivo singulari cre-  
scentia ut, Heroas, Phyllidas.*

M. es in facies cujus quantita-  
tis?

J. Finita in es sunt longa.

Short

Short are Nouns of the 3 declension which make the last syllable but one increasing short as, &c. wealthy, a Souldier, corn growing.

But long of this sort are &c. a firr tree, a ram, bread corn, a wall and a foot with its compounds as, &c. a pair of fetters.

Short is *ēs* from *sum* I am with its compounds, as, &c. thou art present, thou art able.

Also penes in the power of, and Neuters in the singular number, with Nominatives and Vocatives plural of Greek words.

M. Of what quantity is *os* in *logos* a word or speech?

J. Words ending in *os* are long.

Short are &c. endued with, unable, and *ōs* a bone making the Gen. *offis*.

Also Greek words in *ōs* which are written by the short *ō*.

M. Of what quantity is *u* in *gelu* frost?

J. Words ending in *u* are always produced long.

M. Of what quantity is *o* in *amo* to love?

J. *o* at the end of a word is common.

Long are oblique cases in *o* as, &c. to, or in *a*, or the-good-lord-church.

Also Adverbs in *o* derived from Adjectives as, &c. falsely, first by so much the more.

Short are &c. quickly, onely, as or how.

But such Adverbs making *o* common are &c. carefully, frequently, interchangably, late in the evening.

Brevia sunt nomina tertiæ inflexionis quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripunt ut, divēs, milēs, segēs.

Sed longa sunt; abiēs, ariēs, cerēs paries et pēs cum suis compositis ut, compēs.

Brevis est *ēs* a *sum* cum compositis ut, adēs, potēs.

Penēs etiam et Neutra singularia una cum nominativis et vocativis Græcorum pluralibus.

M. *os* in *logos* cujus quantitatis?

J. Finita in *ōs* longa sunt,

Brevia sunt compōs, impōs et *ōs* offis.

Græca etiam in *ōs* quæ per *ō* breve sunt scripta.

M. *u* in *gelu* cujus quantitatis?

J. Finita in *u* semper producuntur.

M. *o* in *amo* cujus quantitatis?

J. Finita in *o* communia sunt.

Longa sunt casus obliqui in *o* ut, bonō, dominō, templō.

Adverbia etiam in *ō* ab adjectivis derivata ut, falsō, primō, tantō.

Brevia vero sunt citō modō, quomodō.

Sed communia sunt sedulō crebrō, mutūō, ferō.

Long

Long are words of one syllable in ō as, &c. Give, I stand, and ergō put for causā for that reason.

Also Greek words wrote by ō long, as, the names of two women.

Seldom long are &c. both, two, I, man.

M. Of what quantity is ut, in caput, the head?

J. The vowel before b, d, t, final, is short. And so also is e final, as, &c. the Sea.

Long are Ablatives of the fifth Declension, as, &c. in the day, in faith, together with Adverbs deriv'd from dies, as, &c. to day, the day before, daily, to which add famē, in a famine.

Also rē with its compounds are long, as, &c. why, or for what reason.

Also Imperatives singular in the second person of the Active voice; and second Conjugation, as, &c. teach thou.

Likewise Adverbs in e derived from Adjectives, as, &c. certainly, greatly.

But short are &c. well, badly.

Long are words of one syllable in ē as, &c. concerning, me, himself, thee.

But short are the inclining conjunctions, &c. least that, and, or.

Also Greek words ending in ē long, as, &c. a river, and pleasant fields name.

M. Of what quantity is e in vel, or?

J. The vowel before l final is short.

Long are &c. nothing, the Sun and some Hebrew words ending l, as, two names of men.

Longa sunt monosyllaba in ō ut, dō, stō, et ergō pro causā.

Item Græca per ō longum ut, Didō Sapphō.

Raro sunt producta ambo, duo, ego, homo.

M. Ut in caput cujus quantitatis?

J. Vocalis ante b, d, t, finita corripitur. Et etiam in e ut marē.

Longa sunt ablativi quintæ inflexionis ut, diē, fidē unā cum adverbijis indē enatis ut hodiē pridē quotidiē, cui adde famē.

Rē etiam cum compositis ut, quarē, i. e. quā de re? .

Item Imperativi singulares secundæ personæ, vocis activæ & secundæ conjugationis ut, docē.

Similiter adverbia in ē ab adjectivis derivata ut, certē, valdē.

Corripitur vero, benē, malē.

Longa sunt monosyllaba in ē ut, dē, mē, sē, tē.

Sed brevia sunt Enclitica quē nē vē.

Græca etiam quæ per ē longum ut, Lethē, tempē.

M. Vel cujus quantitatis?

J. Finita in l dant vocalem præcedentem esse brevem.

Longa sunt nīl, sōl et Hebræa quædam in l ut, Daniël Michaël.

M. Of



M. Of what quantity is i in vir?

J. The vowel before r final is short.

Long are &c. why, breadcorn, a theif, the hearth, a rivers name, the spring, and, even, and words compounded with par, as, a companion, unlike, unequal.

Also Greek words ending er, as, &c. the air, the skie, but ĕr is short in &c. a father, a mother.

M. Of what quantity is i in anguis a snake?

J. Words ending in is, have i short.

Long are Datives, and Ablatives of the first and second Declension, as, &c. to, or in songs, churches, and also quĕis put for quibus-which.

Also those which end in is, making long the penult: of the genitive case increasing, as, &c. a Samnite.

Likewise words of one syllable in ĭs are long, as, &c. strife, strength.

But short are &c. twice, he, who.

Also the second person singular of Verbs ending in is, whose second person plural do end in itis, are long as, &c. thou hearest, thou maist be willing.

M. Of what quantity is us in dominus a Lord?

J. Words ending in us have the ū short.

Long are words making long the penult. of the genitive case increasing, as, the earth, or ground.

Also all words of the fourth Declension ending in us, except the nominative and vocative singular.

M. Vir cujus quantitatis?

J. Vocalis ante r finitum breve est.

Longa sunt cūr, fār, fūr, lār, Nār, vēr, et pār cum compositis, ut, compār, dispār, impār.

Græca etiam in ĕr, ut, aēr æthēr, in patēr vero et matēr ĕt est breve.

M. Is in anguis cujus quantitatis?

J. Finita in is brevia sunt.

Longa sunt dativi et ablativi pluralia primæ et secundæ Declinationis ut, musīs templis, et quĕis etiām pro quibus.

Producentia etiam Genitivi crescentis ut, Samnīs, samnītis.

Item monosyllaba ut, lis, vīs.

Sed brevia sunt bīs, ĭs, quīs.

Similiter secundæ personæ verborum singulares in is, quorum secundæ personæ pluralis desinunt in itis ut, audis, velis.

M. Us in dominus quantitatem rogo?

J. In us finita brevia sunt.

Longa sunt producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis ut, tellus, tellūris.

Omnes etiam casus quārtæ inflexionis in us, præter nominativi et vocativi singulares.

Also

Also all words of one syllable ending in us, as, &c. a mouse, snout, the country, a sow, frankincense.

And Greek words which are writ by the diphthong oos, as, a man, and a womans name.

*Of Words.*

M. What is made of Syllables?

J. Of Syllables are made Words.

M. What is a Word?

J. A Word is a comprehension of Letters, and Syllables, whereby mankind are enabled fitly to express their minds one to another.

*Of Sentences and Points.*

M. And what is composed of Words?

J. Of Words is made Speech or Language.

M. What things are to be observed in the seperating of Speeches?

J. Puncts, or Points are to be minded.

M. What is a Punct or Point?

J. A Point is the seperation of a Speech.

M. How manifold is a Point?

J. It is twofold of an imperfect and of a perfect sentence.

M. Which are the Points of an imperfect sentence?

J. A Comma ( , ) and half-colon ( ; )

M. What is a Comma?

J. Comma is a distinction which sustains, or holds up and stays the breath, without taking breath; and is made at the end

Item omnia monosyllaba in us ut, mūs, pūs, rūs, sūs, thūs.

Et Græca quæ per diphthongum oos, ut, Panthūs, Sapphūs.

*De Vocibus.*

M. Ex Syllabis quid fit?

J. Ex Syllabis fiunt voces.

M. Quid est vox?

J. Vox est literarum et syllabarum comprehensio quibus humanas cogitationes alter ad alterum apte exprimere.

*De Sententijs et Punctis.*

M. Et ex vocibus quid fit?

J. Ex vocibus fit oratio sive locutio.

M. In distinguendis orationibus quæ sunt notanda?

J. Puncta sunt observanda.

M. Quid est Punctum?

J. Punctum est orationis distinctio.

M. Quotuplex est punctum?

J. Duplex, imperfectæ et perfectæ sententiæ.

M. Imperfectæ sententiæ distinctiones quæ sunt?

J. Comma ( , ) et Semicolon ( ; )

M. Comma quid est?

J. Comma est distinctio quæ spiritum sine respiratione sustinet ac suspendit, fit etiam in fine dictionis quasi septimas vel

D of

of a word about seven or eight syllables from another Point.

M. What is a Semi or half-colon ?

J. Semicolon is a distinction which giveth time to breath, whose place is to possess about half the space between a Comma and a Colon, and half the space between that Colon and a Period.

M. What is the distinction of a perfect Sentence ?

J. The distinction of a perfect Sentence is a stop which granteth more time to breath, whereby it may seem to rest or be laid down.

M. How manyfold is the distinction of a perfect Sentence ?

J. It is twofold, a Colon ( : ) and a Period ( . )

M. What is a Colon ?

J. A Colon which is also called a member, is that whereby a perfect Sentence is divided into two parts; but more plainly, it is a stop whereby the breath is deposed for a longer space than in the former points, and is marked at the foot of a word about eighteen syllables from the last period.

M. What is a Period ?

J. A Period is a punct used at the foot of a word when, with a full breath deposited a perfect Sentence is concluded.

M. Are there no more puncts than these ?

J. There are no more proper points reckoned but to these we add the Parenthesis ( ) which is a Sentence shut up between two Semicircles, and which if it were omitted, the sence nevertheless would remain whole.

octavas syllabas.

M. Quid est Semicolon ?

J. Semicolon est distinctio respirandi, cujus est in dimidio fere spacio inter Comma et Colon; post etiam colon, dimidium occupat spacium erga periodum.

M. Perfectæ sententiæ distinctio quid est ?

J. Distinctio perfectæ sententiæ est, quæ respirationem plenioris moræ habet, spiritumque deponit.

M. Quotuplex est distinctio perfectæ sententiæ ?

J. Est duplex colon ( : ) et Periodus ( . )

M. Quid est Colon ?

J. Colon est quod etiam dicitur membrum, et quo quidem perfecta sententia distinguitur, sed aliter est quo spiritus depositus majori tempore, et potest excludere octendecim syllabarum.

M. Quid est Periodus ?

J. Periodus est quando spiritu pleno semper deposito sententia perfecta concluditur.

M. Nonne sunt plures puncti quamties istis.

J. Non proprie enumerantur sed hisce Parenthesis ( ) quod est sententia duabus semilunaris inclusa, quâ remotus sermo tamen manet integer.



? The Interrogation is marked with two points, and the higher upwards with a tail downwards.

! The note of Exclaiming against or admiring at is marked on this manner.

- The Hyphen is a note coupling together, and is always to be used when a word is parted at the end of a line, which must always be at the end of a syllable.

§ Section to divide a large discourse into parts.

[ ] Parathesis we use in Expositions.

\* The Asterisk in Annotations.

† The Obelus in Versions.

|| Equal lines in Quotations.

" When we cite Authors word by word.

☞ Index points to something of note.

△ Induction is made under the line to bring in something omitted.

' Apostrophe is used when a letter is left out on purpose, and is made over the line, as, &c. who you?

" Dialysis is used to part a Diphthong and is made over the Vowels.

¶ Paragraph is an absolute passage or Article.

' The Grave accent we use over a Vowel when the voice is depressed.

' The Acute accent when the voice is to be raised higher.

The Crasis is used over circumflex syllables long by nature.

Also over ablative cases end-

? Interrogatio etiam signatur duobus punctis ac superiore sursum caudato deorsum.

! Exclamatio, ceu admiratio hoc modo signatur.

- Hyphen est nota subunionis et semper utendum cum dictio sit divisa ad extremum lineæ, modo ad finem syllabæ positum.

§ Sectio peramplum sermonem in partes sectare.

[ ] Parathesis utimur expositionibus.

\* Asteriscus in annotationibus.

† Obelus in versionibus.

|| Lineæ paralellæ quotationibus.

" Citationibus verbatim.

☞ Index aliquid observare,

△ Inductio subter lineam est facta aliquid omissum inducere.

' Apostrophus cum de industria litera sit omissa, et supra lineam notatur ut, tun' pro tune?

" Dialysis usus est seperare Diphthongum et super vocales signatur.

¶ Paragraphus est sententia vel articulus absolutum,

' Accentus gravis utimur voce depressa et supra vocalem notatus.

' Accentus acutus voce elivata.

Circumflexus usus est signare syllabam naturam longam.

Item super ablativos in a: et

ing in â, and Genitives in ūs, as, &c. Genitivos in ūs nt, rosâ, manūs.

Also over ergô when put for causâ for that reason, and over verbs syncopated, as, &c. thou hast loved.

*Of Figures belonging to Orthographie.*

M. How many Figures belong to Orthographie?

J. Twelve. &c. whose use is chiefly to allow some liberty to Poets, for making their Verses run more smoothly, which they call carminis gratiâ.

M. Give their Explanations together with Examples to illustrate.

J. Prothesis adds a Letter or Syllable to the beginning of a Word, and Aphæresis take away a Letter or Syllable from thence, as, &c. born, I have suffered, he plucks up, to dispise, for &c.

Syncope taketh away a Letter or Syllable from the middle of a Word which Epenthesis addeth thereunto, as &c. Religion, laid up, and dixti for dixisti thou hast spoken, &c.

Apocope takes away a Letter or Syllable, from the end of a Word, which Paragoge addeth thereunto, as, &c. of the wit, to a charriot, to be said or spoken.

Antithesis and Antistæchon change one Letter for another, as, &c. to him, of us, the man servant, in doing,

Metathesis misplaceth a Letter, as, for Thymber is writ Thymbre, and in pistris r is misplaced.

Super ergô etiam pro causâ, et verbis syncopatis ut, amâsti pro amavisti.

*De Orthographiæ Figuris.*

M. Orthographiæ quot spectant Figuræ?

J. Duodecim, Prothesis, Aphæresis, Syncope, Epenthesis, Apocope, Paragoge, Antithesis, Antistæchon, Metathesis, Tmesis, Synæresis et Diæresis.

M. Audiamus diffinitiones unâ cum Paradigmatis?

J. Prothesis appoint capiti ; Quod Aphæresis aufert ut, Gnatetuli ruit, et non temnere vos, pro natus, tuli, eruit contentenere.

Syncope de medio tollit ; quod Epenthesis infert ut ;

Religio, mavors, jussio, surrexe repostum, pro Religio repositum et dixti pro dixisti.

Aufert Apocope finem quem dat Paragoge. ut ;

Ingeni, Hymen, curru, Tyrio vestirier ostro, pro ingenij curru et dicier pro dici.

Litterulam Antithesis mutat quod et Antistæchon ut ;

Olli, subridens, voftrum, servom, faciundo Pro illi vestrum, servum, faciundo,

Transponitque Elimenta Metathesis, ut, tibi Thymbre pro Thymber, pistris pro priftis.

Tmesis

Tmesis divides or seperates the parts of a compound word, by interposing something between them, as, &c. Those things which please me are placed in the North.

Synæresis contracteth two syllables into one, as &c. swift as the wind, in the beehive, to whom, thin or slender, of the wall, Golden.

Or the hives should have been woven with a slender twig.

Diæresis divideth a syllable or or of one syllable maketh two, as, &c. he might had turned over, brazen, the noise of Bacchus Preists, matter or subject.

They ought to have unwound their spindles.

*Of Etymologie.*

M. Hitherto concerning the first part of Grammar, namely Orthography, now which is the second?

J. Etymologie is the second part of Grammar.

M. What is Etymologie?

J. Etymologie is that part of Grammar which teacheth the Diffinitions, Divisions and Accidents of the parts of Speech or Language.

*Of the parts of Speech.*

M. How many parts of Speech are there?

J. There are Eight parts of Speech.

M. Neither more nor less?

J. Yes, just so many.

M. Name those parts of Speech?

Compositæ in partes est Tmesis sectio vocis ut,

Quæ mihi cunque placent septem subjecta trioni.

Pro quæcunque Septentrioni.

Syllaba de binis confecta synæresis esto ut;

Aeripides, alveo, cui, tenuis parietis, aurea

Seu lento fuerint alvaria vimine texta. Pro alvearia.

Dividit in binas partita, Diæresis unam ut;

Evoluisset, aheneus, evohe, materialai.

Debuerant fusos evoluisse suos. Pro evoluisse, æneus evæ, materiæ.

*De Etymologia.*

M. Hactenus de primâ parte Grammaticæ scilicet Orthographia, quænam est secunda?

J. Etymologia est secunda pars Grammaticæ.

M. Quid est Etymologia?

J. Etymologia est quæ Diffinitiones, Divisiones, cum accidentibus partium orationis tractat.

*De orationis partibus.*

M. Quot sunt partes orationis?

J. Octo sunt partes orationis.

M. Nec plures nec pauciores?

J. Maxime, haud aliter.

M. Nomina mihi illas?

J. No-



J. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Conjunction, Præposition, Interjection.

M. Are all these Eight parts of Speech varied or declined?

J. No, the Four first only are declined, and the Four last are invariable or undeclined.

*Of a Noun, with what belongs to it.*

M. What is a Noun?

J. A Noun is that part of Speech which signifies a Person or a thing.

M. How many sorts of Nouns are there?

J. A Noun is twofold Substantive and Adjective.

M. What is a Substantive?

J. A Substantive is the name of a Person or thing, and which to explain its signification, needeth nothing to be added unto it.

M. How many fold is a Substantive?

J. A Noun Substantive is twofold, Appellative which signifies the name common to all of that kind, as, &c. the head, a book, a father, a bull, a garment, and a city.

And proper which signifies the name attributed to some particular person or thing, as, &c. *Martin, John, Jane, London.*

M. How many are the things which belong to a Noun?

J. Eight things belong to a Noun, Person, Number, Case, Declension, Gender, Comparison, Species and Figure.

J. Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium, Adverbium, Conjunctio, Præpositio, Interjectio.

M. Hæ octo partes orationis suntne omnes declinabiles?

J. Non, quatuor priores tantum sunt declinabiles, et quatuor posteriores sunt inflexibiles.

*De nomine cum accidentibus.*

M. Quid est Nomen?

J. Nomen est pars orationis quæ vel Personam, aut Rem significat.

M. Quotuplex est nomen?

J. Nomen est duplex, Substantivum, et Adjectivum.

M. Quid est Substantivum?

J. Substantivum est quod nihil addi postulat ad suam significationem exprimendam.

M. Quotuplex est Substantivum?

J. Substantivum est duplex Appellativum quod rem multis communem significat, ut, *Caput liber, pater, taurus, vestis et urbs.*

Et Proprium quod rem uni individuo propriam significat ut, *Martinus, Johannes, Jana, Londinum.*

M. Quot sunt accidentia nominis?

J. Octo accidunt nomini, Persona, numerus, Casus, Declinatio, Genus, Comparatio, Species, et Figura,

*Of*

*Of Persons.*

M. Of what Person is liber a book?

J. Of the Third person because, every Noun, Participle and whatsoever is put instead of a Substantive are of the Third person, as, &c. thy knowledge.

*Of Numbers.*

M. How many Numbers are there?

J. Numbers are Two the singular and plural, the singular speaks but of one, as, &c. a boy, the book, a pen.

The plural speaks of more than one, as, &c. two or three boys, books, &c.

M. Manes in the singular number?

J. These Masculines are content with plural number only altho they may seem to signify but one thing.

Ghosts, forefathers, van of an army, monthly visits and posterity.

Children, yearly chronicles, hobgoblins, register books and domestick Gods.

Posterity, also the Gods above, an Ensign of Authority, and graves, also a truce.

To which add note books, with inhabitants of heaven and Romanes.

Nobles, peers, and jests, so also the souls in hell and the limbs.

The nostrils, and preambles, starting place in races, a ledger book and the jaws.

Lattices, twins, borders of a countrey many more.

*De Personis.*

M. Liber cujus Personæ?

J. Tertiæ, quia omne nomen, Participium, et quicquid supplet locum Substantivi sunt tertiæ personæ ut, scire tuum, pro scientia tua.

*De Numeris.*

M. Quot sunt numeri?

J. Numeri sunt duo, singularis et pluralis, singularis loquitur de uno ut, puer, liber, penna.

Pluralis loquitur de pluribus ut, duo, tres pueri libri, &c.

M. Manes in numero singulari?

J. Mascula hæc tantum numero contenta secundo.

Quamvis certa horum significant modo unum.

Manes, majores, antes, mensæque minores.

Liberi, et annales, lemures, fastique, penates.

Posterius, item superius, fascis, loculique, ferique.

Adde pugillares, cum cælitibusque Quirites.

Primores, procereque sales, sic inferi, et artus.

Nares, et ambages, carceres, codicillique fames.

Cancelli, gemini fines, plerique plures.

Gran.

Grandeas, each, household gods, demi gods and parentage.

And the names of Cities ending in i as, *Gabij* want the singular.

M. Divitiæ in the singular number.

J. These nouns are of the Feminine gender and plural number only.

Womans towers, funeral ceremonies threatnings, an ambush and a truce.

Relicks, nones, trifles, a booty and the ides of a month.

Refuse things, cradles, curses, gawags, and devilish sacrifices.

Hollydays, and watches and wards the three furies, horse trappings and Calends.

First fruits, small guts, thanks, folding doors and darkness.

Riches, the three destinies, a cart with four horses, marriages, the *Alps*.

Fair words, the sail yard, a cart with two horses, a citys name, smartness trifles.

Panniers, lurking holes, tythes so also a hills name, a house.

An enticement, and hurdles, raillery, foolery, and the door posts.

The seven stars, doors, baths, learning, and the after-birth.

Scaffolds, deceit, things put off, Estate, and hunters nets.

Riches, names of two Islands, lees of oil, mites, dregs of wine.

The glandules, rough places, name of a city and deceit, sheep coats.

The watch, setters, an award a besom, aid or help.

Furies, goddesses of the woods, lamentations, Embassadors allowance, stairs.

Optimates, singuli, lares, indigitesque natales.

Nominaque urbium in i carent etiam singulari, ut, *Gabij*.

M. Divitiæ numero singulari?

J. Hæc sunt fæminei generis numerique secundi.

Antix, exequiæ, minæ insidiæ induciæque.

Reliquiæ, nonæ, nugæ manubiæ et idus.

Quisquillæ, cunæ diræ, triciæ inferiæque.

Feriæ et excubiæ, furæ phalaræque, calendæ.

Primitiæ lactes, grates, valvæ, tenebræque.

Divitiæ, parcæ, quadrigæ nuptiæ et *Alpes*.

Blanditiæ, antennæ, bigæ baiæ, argutiæ apinæ.

Clitellæ, latebræ, decimæ, sic exquiliæ, ædes.

Illecebræ, gerræque, facetiæ ineptiæ, et antæ.

Vergiliæque fores, thermæ, literæque secundæ.

Phalæ, officiæ, exuviæ fortunæque plagæ.

Opes, symplegades, fraces minutæ floces.

Tonsillæ, salebræ, traphæ et præstigiæ, caulæ.

Vigiliæ, compedes, vindiciæ scopæ suppetiæ.

Eumenides, Dryades, lamentæ lautæ scalæ.



Also the names of Cities ending in es, and æ want the singular.

M. Why doth arma want the singular?

J. These Neuters are read in the plural number, seldom in the singular.

Acta, æstiva arma, adversaria castra.

Junkets, banqueting, cross ways, rattles, old rags.

Oracles, mountains name, offerings, cradles, and intrails.

The guts, ordinary task, and winter quarters, cottages, a building, dens.

Great works, cottages, cottages, washbals, a whale.

How many, so many, the overplus dowry, fine clothes, offices, exploits.

Forgetfulness, pasture, amulets midriff, pulpets.

Rape leaves, with spoils, embassadours allowance, and rough places, a standing camp.

Vitals, an assembly, grape stones, stripes and privy places.

And wanting the singular you may add the two Greek words signifying pleasant fields and songs.

Also the names of feasts, books,

Cities and plays ending in a want the singular, as, a Saturnine feast, the Bible, a cities name, and the olympick games.

Also all cardinal nouns of number from two even to infinity are of the plural number only, as, &c. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

Also distributives, as, &c. two by 2, three by 3, four by 4.

M. Patientia in the plural number?

Item in es sic in æ urbium, ut Gades, et Athenæ.

M. Arma caret singulari quare?

J. Rarius hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur.

Acta, æstiva arma, adversaria castra.

Bellaria, repotia, compita crepundia scruta.

Effata, Ceraunia, donaria, cunabula, et exta.

Ilia, iusta et hiberna, mapalia, mænia, lustra.

Magnalia, magalia, magaria, magmata Cete.

Quot, tot, parapherna, multitia, munia, gesta.

Oblivia, pascua, præbia, præcordia rostra.

Rapacia cum spolia, lautia et tesqua, stativa.

Vitalia comitia, vinacea, verberaque virenda.

Nomina græca licet imponas tem. e, meleque.

Carent singulari etiam nomina in a Festorum, librorum, urbiumque ludorum, ut;

Saturnalia, Biblia, Buxa et Olympia.

Item numeralia cardinalia à duo usque ad infinitum sunt pluralis numeri tantum ut; duo, tres, quatuor, quinque, sex.

Distributivæ quoque ut; bini, terni, quaterni.

M. Patientia numero plurali?

J. Nouns want the plural number whose nature are restrained to the singular only. And such are the Nouns following which commonly want the plural number.

Nouns signifying proper names.

The names of ages of mans life, of arts, spices, flowers, corn, herbs, humors, liquors, metals, minerals, vices, and virtues.

M. Hordeum therefore in the plural.

J. These Nouns are read in the Nominative, Vocative and Accusative plural only.

Barley, wines, a market, bread corn, mead, burnt wine, a blemish.

The dew, sea, honey, offspring, winter, countrey, frankincense, hope.

Add also amber, the ground, brass, and sense or meaning, and dirt or mud.

M. Pulvis in the plural number?

J. These Masculines scarcely or never exceed the singular number.

The evening star, the world, sea, dust or powder, shame, the air.

Dung, and moss, blood, mud, sleep, the skie.

Noon or the south, meat and drink, no body, evening, birdlime and fatness.

A womans belt, and smoak, salt, fear, scituation and fear.

An attendant angel, with a prison, a door nail, liveliness the sun paleness, and extravasated blood.

M. Why doth gloria want the plural?

J. Plurali careant quibus est natura coercens.

Et sic sequentia ferè plurali carent.

Nomina propria significantia.

Nomina ætatum, artium, aromatum, florum, granorum, herbarum, humorum, liquorum, metallorum, mineralium, vitiumque virtutum.

M. Hordeum igitur plurali?

J. Tres similes voces tantum hæc pluralia servant.

Hordea, vina, forum, far mulsum, defruta, labes.

Ros, mare, mel, soboles, byems, rusque, thus, spes.

Electrum, adde solum, æs, et sensumque lutumque.

M. Pulvis in numero plurali?

J. Mascula hæc numerum vix excedentia primum.

Hesperus, et mundus, pontus pulvis, pudor, aer.

Fimus, et muscus, sanguis limus, sopor, æther.

Meridies, penus, nemo vesper viscus et adeps.

Cestus, et fumus, sal, metus sitisque timor.

Genius, cum carcer, clavus & vigor sol, pallor et, cruor.

M. Gloria caret plurali quare?

J. These

J. These singulars of the Feminine Gender are seldom read in the plural.

Glory, riches, health, maturity, pitch, like for like, a cough.

Melancholy, the ground, a flight, a fault, infection, the earth.

Light, quietness, an offspring, and an offspring, memory, a consumption.

Fame, a murrain, death, a pile or stack, choler, thirst and the paunch.

Poverty, common people, rest, peace, galls, towardliness and a spot.

A beard, the skin, sand, a hogstye, ulcerous matter, fine speeches, plagues.

Phlegm, slaughter, health, a pedigree, life and age.

As also all Nouns of the fifth Declensions, except &c. a matter, form or shape, the face, and an edge and the day.

M. Why doth *pus* want the plural?

J. Neither may we give the plural number to these neutrals.

Corruption, a milk vessel, a throne, nothing, glew, and shambles.

A bewitching, black speck of a bean, salt petre, hay, and old age.

The Sea, ivory, common people, brawny skin, skirwort and a foil.

A liver, an age, a withy, corrupt blood, a herring, and a muster roll.

Death, so dirt, any deep place, salt, and clay.

A vacation, glass, the spring, birdlime, frost and metheglin.

J. Singula *faminei generis pluralia raro.*

Gloria, gaza, salus, pubes, pix, talio, tuffis.

Bilis, humus fuga, culpa, fames, contagio, tellus.

Lux, requies, proles, sobolesque memoria tabes.

Fama, lues, mors, strues, cholera et fitis alvus.

Paupertas, plebs, quies, pax, galla, indole, labes.

Barba, cutis, arena, hara, fanies, loculentia pestis.

Pituïta nex, valetudo, prosapia vitæque ætas.

Ut et omnia quintæ inflexionis. Excipe res, species, facies, aciesque diesque.

M. *Pus* caret plurali quare?

J. Nec licet his neutris numerum deferre secundum.

*Pus*, finum, folium, nihilum, glutenque, macellum.

Fascinium, hilum, nitrum, fænum, seniumque.

Pelagus, ebur, vulgus, callum fiser atque solum.

Hepar ævum, filer, tabum hallec et album.

Lethum, sic cænum, barathrumque sal, lutum.

Iustitium, vitrum, ver, viscum geluque mustum. E 2 A



A sunbeam, right, meat and drink, a villain, milk, a sheep-hook, poison, gaul, the salt sea and saffron.

Jubar, fas, penum, nefas, lac pedum, virus, fel, salum & crocum.

### *Concerning Cases.*

M. How many cases are there?

J. Cases are six in each number.

M. Name them to me?

J. The Nominative, Vocative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative and Ablative.

M. What is Case?

J. Case is the proper termination of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle by which it swerves from the Nominative.

M. How manyfold is Case?

J. Case is twofold the Nominative and Vocative, which are called right cases, because for the most part they have a right and like termination.

The Genitive, Dative, Accusative and Ablative are called oblique cases, because they have oblique and diverse terminations or endings.

M. How is a Case known?

J. To the question who or what? is answerd by the Nominative case, whose property is to come before a Verb, and usually hath the signs, a, the, an before it in English.

The Vocative hath the Interjection O expressed or understood, both in English and Latine.

To the question whose? or whereof? is answerd by the Genitive case, and in English hath the sign Of, before it or s after it.

### *De Casibus.*

M. Quot sunt casus?

J. Casus sunt sex utroque numero.

M. Audiamus illos?

J. Nominativus, Vocativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus et Ablativus.

M. Quid est Casus?

J. Casus est terminatio peculiaris Nominis, Pronominis, vel Participij de qua Nominativo recedit.

M. Quotuplex est Casus?

J. Duplex Nominativus et vocativus qui dicuntur recti quia plerumque habent rectam, et similem terminationem.

Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus et Ablativus dicuntur obliqui quia terminationes obliquas et diversas habet.

M. Unde dignoscitur casus?

J. Ad questionem qui? vel quid? respondetur per nominativum.

Vocativus habet O expressum vel intellectum.

Ad questionem Cujus? respondetur per Genitivum.

To the question to whom? or to what? is answered by the Dative case; and in English hath the sign to, and for, the profit or hurt of any thing.

To the question whom? or what? is answered by the Accusative case whose property is to follow a Verb, with the signs a, the, in English.

The Ablative case hath a Preposition either expressed or understood which in English are at, by, for, from, in, on, thro, with, than after an Adjective of the Comparative degree, and of after a verb passive.

M. Of what case is nequam?

J. Nequam is of every case.

M. By what Rule?

J. Nouns which are varied into no case, but are applied to every case, you shall call Aptotes, and they are these, &c.

Naught, so many, just so many, as many, how many soever, a few, need.

A pound weight, lawful, an execrable deed, nothing, nothing, proportion, an ill habit.

Necessary, needful, the palm, top of a corn ear, venom, a den, the hollow of the hand or foot, herb nigella.

Thrifty, gum, half, ones possession, nought and mustard.

A Ballad, a thousand, pleasant fields, an onion, delightful, a whale, the morning, the latine.

A rug, a manger, a cities name, a horn, the frost, a knee, a spit.

Of this sort, of this kind, of what sort, of what sort soever.

Of what quality soever, of what manner soever, of every sort.

Ad quæstionem Cui? respondetur per Dativum.

Ad quæstionem Quem? respondetur per Accusativum.

Ablativus habet Præpositionem expressam vel intellectam.

M. Nequam cujus Casus?

J. Omnium est casuum.

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Quæ casum nullum variant Aptota vocabis, ut sunt.

Nequam, tot, totidem, quot quotcunque, aliquot, opus.

Pondo, fas, nefas, nil, nihil, instar, cacoethes.

Necesse, necessum, hir, frit, virus, specus, subtil, git.

Frugi, gummi, semi, mancipi, nihilique, tinapi.

Mele, mille, tempe, Cœpe, volupe, cete, mane, latine.

Gausape, præsepe, astu pro urbe, cornu, gelu, genuq; veru.

Hujusmodi, hujusmodi, cujusmodi, cujusdammodi.

Cujuscujusmodi, cujusmodicumque, cujusquemodi.

Of the same sort, such like, of the same quality, of that sort.

Of the same sort, or such, of another manner.

But some of these Aptotes are read in the Plural, as, knees.

Also Aptotes are Cardinal Nouns of number from four to a hundred inclusive, as, 4, 5, 6, 7.

Likewise all names of Letters, as, &c. the names of two Greek and two Hebrew Letters.

Also the Orders of Angels, as, the order Cherubims, Seraphims.

And Barbarous names, as, *Adam, Seth, Noe*.

Likewise the names of Towns ending in i and y, as, &c. the names of two Cities or Towns.

And whatsoever is put instead of a Substantive, as, &c. another day.

M. Of what case is incitas?

J. It is of the Accusative case, and plural number only because, those Nouns are called Monoptotes, which are applied to one case only, namely.

N. able, hopeless, fulness, condemned. Gen. of a form or fashion, of a thing, of nought. Dat. dispiht, a dividing, a deceiving, a putting on, mockery, a mocking, by the index. Ac. twice folded, thrice folded, a denial, a straight places below, banishment, renown, a pedigree. Voc. o brave. Abl. a sending for, a summoning, a warning, an avouching, an appointment, constraint, an allowing, a granting and &c. in the day, light, for the cause, a dashing against, relying upon, a command, want of a charge, without counsel, an instinct, the will, a

Ejuscemodi, ejusmodi, ejusdammodi illiusmodi.

Istiusmodi, aliusmodi vel alimodi.

Horum vero nonnulla plurali leguntur ut, genua, genuum.

Aptota etiam sunt Numeralia Cardinalia à quatuor usque ad centum, ut, quatuor, quinque, &c.

Item nomina literarum. ut, Alpha, Omega, Aleph, Tau.

Ordines etiam Angelorum, ut, Cherubim, Seraphim.

Barbara etiam nomina, ut, *Adam, Seth, Noe*.

Item nomina Oppidorum in i et y ut, Illiturgi, Dory.

Et quicquid vice substantivi positum ut, aliud cras (pro) alius dies.

M. Incitas cujus casus?

J. Est accusandi casus et pluralis numeri tantum, quia, Esto Monoptoton casu quod flectitur uno, videlicet.

N. Potis pote, expes, fatias, damnas. Gen. Dicis, nauci. Dat. Despicatur, divisui, frustratur, indutui, ludificatur, ostentui, venui. Ac. Bilicem, trilicem, inficias, incitas, inferias, fugas, famas, Pro sapias. Voc. Maeste Pl. maesti. Abl. Accitu, accersitu, admonitu, affatu, allegatu, coactu, concessu, datu & diu, lucu, ergo pro die, luce, causa, flectu fretu, jussu, injussu, inconsultu, instinctu, libitu, mandatu, missu monitu, natu, noctu, peccatu, permisso, precatu, promptu, oratu, horatu, objectu, relatu, vocatu, invitatu, ingratu, tijs.



warrant, a sending away, a warning by birth, by night, by a crime, by leave, by request, in readiness, by praying, by advising, by opposing, by reporting, by calling, by bidding to, in spite of ones teeth.

M. Decline Vesper?

J. N. the evening. Ab. in the evening. The plural is entire.

M. By what rule?

J. Diptotes are varied in or applied to two cases only, namely.

Nom. Chance, the evening.

Ablat. By chance in the evening.

Gen. Of briberies, of a stripe, of an acre, of the inward part of the thigh, of ones own accord, of blood corrupt. Abl. in the same.

Gen. Of help. Ac. the succors.

Ac. the request. Abl. with asking.

Dat. to derision, to a wedding, to a pretense.

Abl. at, by, for, from, &c. the same.

M. N. and Ac. so much. Gen. of so much. By what rule?

J. Some Nouns are varied in three cases only in the singular, and some are Triptotes in the plural number, as;

Dat. to the opinion. Ac. the will.

Abl. in the judgment.

M. Decline impes?

J. N. violence. Gen. of violence. Ab. by force. Plur. with forces. M. By what rule?

J. They call those Nouns Tetraptotes which are varied in 4 cases only, as, N. a Controversie. Ac. the action. Abl. in the cause. Ac. processes.

M. Vesper inflecte?

J. N. Vesper. Ab. vespere habet pluralem.

M. Quà regulà?

J. Calibus et tantum variant Diptota duobus, viz.

N. Fors, Vesper.

Ab. forte, vespere vel vespiri.

Gen. Repetundarum, verberis, jugeris, fæminis, spontis, tabi. Ab. Repetundis verbere jugere, femine sponte, tabo.

G. Suppetiæ. Ac. Suppetias.

Ac. Rogatum. Ab. Rogatu.

Dat. irrisui, nuptui, obtentui.

Abl. irrisu, nuptu, obtentu.

M. N. Ac. tantundem. G. tantidem perquam regulam?

J. Fleste tribus primo, quædam Triptota secundo, ut,

D. Arbitratui. Ac. Arbitratum.

Ab. Arbitratu.

M. Impes inflecte?

J. N. Impes. G. impetis. Ab. impete, impetibus.

M. Quà regulà?

J. Tetraptota vocant casus quæ quatuor optant ut, N. dica. Ac. dicam. Ab. dicâ. Ac. dicas.

N. no

N. no body. Da. to no body.  
Ac. no body. Abl. with no body.

M. Grates in the Genitive case plural ?

J. It hath none.

M. By what rule ?

J. Those Nouns are called Pentaptotes which want one case in either number as,

Wanting the Genitive case plural are &c. dregs, cells in honey combs, a mouth, and the sun, brass and the sea.

Wanting the Dative case singular are &c. more, power.

Wanting the Nom. singular are &c. G. of delicate meat, of authority, of fruit, of wealth, of a prayer, of the foremost, of a governour, filthiness, stead of another.

Nouns of asking a question, also nouns without limitation, and Pronouns usually want the Vocative case.

Except &c. mine, our, our country man, and thou.

Wanting the Gen. and Dat. singular are &c. a mustiness.

Ab. &c. a deceitful tale, a hurdle, the chaps, have the plural intire.

Hyems, The winter, wants the Dat. and Ab. plural.

### *Of Declensions.*

M. What is Declension ?

J. Declension is the declining of a Noun according to the case, and they are five in number.

M. How is Declension known ?

J. By the ending of the Nom. case sing. and are distinguished one from another by the Gen.

N. Nemo. D. Nemini. Ac. neminem. Ab. nemine.

M. Grates Genitivo plurali ?

J. Caret.

M. Per quam regulam.

J. Pentaptota quibus tibi casus quinque supersunt ut,

Carent Genitivo plurali fæx grates, os oris et sol, æs et mare.

Carent Dat. singulari plus, vis.

Carent Nom. singulari, Dapis, ditionis, frugis, opis, precis, primoris, proceris, sordisque, vicis.

Interrogativa etiam Indefinita & Pronomina fere carent vocativo

Præter meus, noster, nostras, et tu.

Caret G. et D. Singulari fitus.

Ab. Ambage, crate, fauce habent pluralem.

Caret D. et Ab. Plurali Hyems.

### *De inflexionibus.*

M. Quid est Declinatio ?

J. Declinatio est flexio nominis secundum casum et sunt numero quinque.

M. Unde dignoscitur inflexio ?

J. Ex Nominativi et Genitivi singularis terminationibus.

M. The first Declension how many terminations in the Nom. singular?

J. It hath four terminations in the Nom. case a, e, as, es, and makes the Genitive in æ.

M. Give an Example in a?

J. Aqua water, aquæ of water.

M. In e? An abrigement of an abrigement.

M. In as? *Aneas* is a mans name.

M. In es? And so is *Anchises*.

M. How many terminations in the Nom. hath the second Declension?

J. It hath eight, er, eus, ir, on, os, um, ur, us, and make the Genitive in i.

M. Give an Example in er?

J. Puer a boy, pueri of a boy.

M. In eus? is a mans name.

In ir? a man, of a man.

In on? a lute, of a lute.

In os? a saying, of a saying.

In um? a great stone, of a &c.

In ur? full of meat, &c.

In us? a lord of a lord.

M. How many endings hath the third Declension in the Nom. case?

J. It hath twelve, a, c, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x, and hath the Genitive case ending in is.

M. Give an Example in a?

J. A decree, of a decree.

M. In c? milk, of milk.

In d? *David*, of *David*.

In e? the sea, of the Sea.

In i? mustard undeclined.

In l? salt, of salt.

In n? grass, of grass.

In o? a speech, of a speech.

In r? a spur, of a spur.

In s? a stone, of a stone.

Prima Declinatio quot habet terminationes?

J. Nominativo quatuor habet a, e, as, es, et dat Genitivum in æ.

M. Da mihi Exemplum in a?

J. Aqua, aquæ.

M. In e? Epitome Epitomes.

M. In as? *Aneas*, *Aneæ*.

M. In es? *Anchises*, *Anchisæ*.

M. Secunda declinatio nominativo quot habet terminationes?

J. Octo habet er, eus, ir, on, os, um, ur, us, et dat Genitivum in i.

M. Redde Exemplum in er?

J. Puer pueri.

M. In eus? *Orpheus Orphei*.

In ir? vir, viri.

In on? barbiton, barbiti.

In os? logos, logi.

In um? saxum, saxi.

In ur? satur, saturi.

In us? Dominus domini.

M. Tertia declinatio quot habet terminationes in Nominativo?

J. Duodecim habet a, c, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x, et dat Genitivum in is.

M. Redde paridigma in a?

J. Dogma dogmatis.

M. In c? lac, lactis.

In d? *David*, *Davidis*.

In e? mare, maris.

In i? sinapi aptoton.

In l? fal, falis.

In n? gramen graminis.

In o? sermo, sermonis.

In r? calcar, calcaris.

In s? lapis, lapidis.



In t ? the head, of the head.

In x ? a flock, of the flock.

M. How many endings hath the fourth Declension in the Nominative case ?

J. It hath two endings, in us and u, it also makes the Genitive case in us and u, for example, &c. a hand, a knee.

M. How many endings hath the fifth Declension in the Nominative case ?

J. It has but one ending in es, as, &c. a day, and makes the Genitive end in ei, as, &c. of a day.

M. Give me the Genitive case singular of the first, second, third, fourth and fifth Declension ?

J. æ, i, is, ūs, ei.

M. Rehearse the endings of the Dative case singular of the 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 declension ?

J. æ, o, i, ui, ei.

M. Give the the Accusative singular of the 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 Declension ?

J. am, um, em, um, em.

M. How endeth the Ablative singular of the 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 Declension ?

J. â, o, e, u, e.

M. Give the Genitive case plural ?

J. arum, orum, um, uum, e-rum.

M. Give the Dative case plural ?

J. is, is, bus, ibus, ebus.

M. Why doth filia in the Nominative make filia in the Vocative ?

J. Because the Vocative case is like the Nominative in every Declension, and the Ablative plural is also like the Dative.

M. Filia in the Dative and Ablative plural ? J. Filiabus.

In t ? caput, capitis.

In x ? grex, gregis.

M. Quarta declinatio nominativo quot habet terminationes ?

J. Duas habet in us et u, dat etiam Genitivum in us et u, Exempli gratiâ manus genu.

M. Quinta declinatio Nominativo quot habet terminationes ?

J. Unam habet in es, ut, dies & dat Genitivum in ei ut, diei.

M. Dic mihi Genitivum singularem, primæ, secundæ, tertiæ, quartæ et quintæ inflectionis ?

J. æ, i, is, ūs, ei.

M. Recita terminationes Dativi singularis 1 æ, 2 æ, 3 æ, 4 æ et 5 æ inflectionis ?

J. æ, o, i, ui, ei.

M. Redde accusativum singularem 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5 æ inflectionis ?

J. am, um, em, um, em.

M. Quomodo mittit Ablativum singularem 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 æ Decl.

J. â, o, e, u, e.

M. Dic Genitivum pluralem ?

J. arum, orum, um, uum, e-rum.

M. Redde Dativum pluralem ?

J. is, is, bus, ibus, ebus.

M. Filia in vocativo filia quare ?

J. Quia vocativus similis est Nominativo ; et Ablativus Pluralis etiam Dativo.

M. Filia in Dativo et Ablativo plurali ? J. Filiabus. M.

M. Why?

J. The soul, an ass, both, two, a goddess, a mistress, a mare, a maid servant, a daughter, a free woman, a she mule, a daughter, a companion, a maid servant, a fellow maid servant make abusus (not) is, in the Dative and Abl. plural?

M. Dominus in the vocative?

J. Domine.

M. By what rule?

J. From us of the second Declension is made the vocative in e.

M. Why then doth Deus make Deus in the vocative case?

J. Because Deus God hath Deus in the voc. and meus make mi in the masculine gender.

M. Georgius George in the vocative?

J. Georgi o George because proper names in ius make the vocative in i, so also filius a son, and Genius a disposition make the voc. in i.

M. Agnus in the vocative case?

J. Agne and agnus because, &c. a lamb, a quire, a river, a grove, people, and the common people make the vocative both in e and us.

M. How doth unus end in the Genitive?

J. Unius and uni in the Dative because &c. another, another, one or the other, neither, none, alone, whole, one, and any.

Whether, both, which you will, also the pronouns, &c. he, the same, he that, do make the Genitive by ius and the Dative by i in every Gender.

M. Problema a proposition in the Dative case plural?

M. Quà regulâ?

J. Anima, asina, ambæ, duæ, dea, domina, equa, famula, filia, liberta, mula, nata, socia, serva et conserva in Dativo et Ablativo plurali abusus habent.

M. Dominus in vocativo?

J. Domine.

M. Perquam regulam?

J. Ab us secundæ declinationis fit vocativus in e.

M. Deus in vocativo Deus quare?

J. Quia Deus, in vocativo habet Deus, et meus masculino mi,

M. Georgius in vocativo?

J. Georgi quia propria nomina in ius faciunt vocativos in i, sic etiam filius dat fili et genius geni?

M. Agnus in vocativo?

J. Agne et agnus quia agnus, chorus, fluvius, lucus, populusque vulgus faciunt vocativum in e et us.

M. Unus in Genitivo?

J. Unius et Dativo uni quia alius, alter, alteruter, neuter, nullus, solus, totus, unus et ullus.

Uter, uterque, utervis pronomina etiam ille, ipse, iste Genitivum per ius et Dativum per i in omni genere faciunt.

M. Problema in Dativo plurali?

E2

J. Pro-

J. Problematis and problema-tibus because Neuters in a make the Dative and Ablative plural in is and ibus.

M. Problema in the vocative and accusative? J. Problema.

M. In the Nominative plural?

J. Problemata because Neuters have three cases alike in both numbers, namely the Nominative, Vocative and Accusative, which three cases in the plural number always end in a.

But ambo both and duo two make those three cases plural in o.

M. Doth the Accusative case singular of the third Declension always end in em, the Ablative in e, and the Genit. plural in um?

J. No, for Nouns not encreasing in the Genitive case usually make the Accusative in im, as, tussis a cough make tussim in the Accusative.

Which with Neuters ending in e, make the Ablative in e, with a cough, with salt, bread corn from tussis, sal, far.

Which with Nouns ending in ns, rs, and x, usually make the Genitive plural in ium, as &c. a tooth, a lot, a flock, do make &c. in the Genitive.

With several others which must be observed as they occur.

There are some Nouns which make the Accusative both in em and im, also the Ablative both in e and i which must likewise be noted on occasion.

Jecur the liver, has two endings in the Genitive Case,

M. Decline Jesus?

J. N. Jesus, Ac. Jesum in other cases Jesu.

M. Ancilium in the Genitive plural?

J. Problema-tis et-tibus quia neutra in a faciunt Dativum et Ablativum pluralem in is et ibus.

M. Problema in Vocativo et Accusativo? J. Problema.

M. In Nominativo plurali?

J. Problemata quia neutra habent tres similes casus, Nominativum Vocativum et Accusativum, qui in plurali semper desinunt in a.

Ambo vero et duo dant neutrum in o.

M. Mittitne semper tertiæ declinationis accusativum in em. Ablativum in e et Genitivum pluralem in um?

J. Non, nam nomina non crescentia Genitivo ferè faciunt, Accusativum in im ut, tussis dat Accusativo tussim.

Quæ cum neutris in al, ar, e, dat Ablativum in i ut, tussi sali, fari, ex tussis sal, far.

Quæ cum nominibus in ns, rs, et x, fere faciunt, Genitivum pluralem in ium ut, dens, fors, grex, faciunt dentium, sortium, gregium.

Cum multis alijs quæ sunt usu discenda.

Certa sunt quæ dant Accusativum in em et im Ablativum etiam in e et i usu etiam discenda.

Jecur Genitivo, dat jecoris & jecinoris.

M. Inflecte Jesus?

J. N. Jesus, Ac. Jesum cæteris Jesu.

M. Ancilia Genitivo plurali ( J. A



J. A short sheild, tributes or taxes, feasts of Bacchus, feasts of Saturn have the Genitive &c.

A needle, limbs, an arch, delivery, a haven, a den, a stock or root, in the Dative and Ablat. cases plural have ubus (not) ibus.

M. Say all the Declensions with an Example upon each?

J. That I will do presently.

M. Audiamus praxin hujus tabulæ J. Exercitium horæ primæ die Lunæ matutino tempore.

J. Terminationes Primæ [ secundæ tertiæ quartæ, quintæ ] declinationis cumparadigmate.

*Numero Singulari.*

N. in a ut norma a Ruler

V. in a ut norma o Ruler

G. in æ ut normæ of a Ruler

D. in æ ut normæ to a Ruler

Ac. in am at normam the Ruler

Ab. in â ut normâ with the Ruler

*Numero Plurali.*

N. in æ ut normæ Rulers

&c. per omnes casus, et inflectiones.

M. Titan in the Accusative case? J. Titana.

M. By what rule?

J. Greek words made Latine retain their own method in declining; according to this table. But if any of them have a plural number, it is regular by the first table.

*Verbi Gratia.*

Exercitium horæ primæ die martis matutino tempore.

J. Ancilia, vestigalia Bachanalia, Saturnalia dant um, et, orum.

Acus, artus, arcus, portus, portus, specus tribus in Dativo et Ablativo plurali habent ubus.

M. Da omnes Declinationes cum paradiagmate?

J. Hoc puncto temporis agam.

	Nom.	[V.]	[Ge.]	[D.]	[Ac.]	[Ab.]
<i>Numero Singul.</i>						
1	Norm-a	a	æ	æ	am	â
2	Nid-us	e	i	o	um	o
3	Anf-er	er	is	i	em	e
4	Fruct-us	us	ûs	us	um	u
5	Faci-es	es	ei	ei	em	e

	Nom.	[V.]	[Ge.]	[D.]	[Ac.]	[Ab.]
<i>Numero Plu.</i>						
1	Norm-æ	æ	arum	is	as	is
2	Nid-i	i	orum	is	os	is
3	Anf-er-es	es	um	ibus	es	ibus
4	Fruct-us	us	uum	ibus	us	ibus
5	Faci-es	es	erum	ebus	es	ebus

M. Titan in Accusativo?

J. Titana.

M. Quâ regulâ?

J. Græca inflectendo Græcorum retinent formam; secundum hoc speculum; si vero quodlibet habet pluralem regulariter variatur per speculum superius.

## Primâ Inflectione.

N. *Æneas, Epitome, Anchises*V. *Ænea, Epitome, Anchise vel a*G. *Æneæ, Epitomes, Anchisæ*D. *Æneæ, Epitome, Anchisæ*Ac. *Æneam vel Ænean, Epitomen, Anchisen*Ab. *Ænea, Epitome, Anchise vel Anchisa, &c.*

Note all such Greekish words are either of the 1, 2 or 3 Declension.

M. Of what Declension is Grammar?

J. It is of the first Declension in the singular number, but of the second in the plural, and so are all names of Sciences commonly declined, viz. *Ethica, Physica, Dialectica, Rhetorica, &c.*

Both by the first and third Declension are varied, &c. the names of five men, *Easter*, and a form.

Both by the second and third Declension are varied &c. *Vulcan*, a mediator, and Nouns ending in *es* coming from Greek Nominatives in *eus* and *es*, *as*, &c. nine names of men, but *e* is taken away in the Genitive case, in those which come from *es*, *as*, *Herculi* (not) *Herculei* &c.

Both by the second and fourth Declension have commonly been varied, &c. regard, a bow, the tide, meat, exercise, a beech, surliness, a wave, a sigh or sob, the ground, a bed, bewailing, preparation, delivery, a fishing, a haven, a complaint, sleep, a sound, juice, a whispering, expences, a chattering, a tumult, the wind the common people, &c.

	Nom.	V.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	A.
Numero Singulari.	1	as	a	æ	æ	am, an
		e	e	es	e	en
		es	e, a	æ	æ	en
2		eus	eu	ei, eos	ei	ea, eon
		on	on	i	o	on
		os	os	i	o	on
3		an	an	anos	ani	ana
		as	a	antos	anti	anta
		er	er	eros	eri	era
		is	i	idos	idi	ida, in
		o	o	ûs	o	o

M. Grammatica cujus inflexionis?

J. Est Primæ singulari secundæ vero plurali quia nomina artium ita fere variantur ut, N. Grammaticæ vel Grammatica &c. N. P. Grammatica Grammaticorum &c.

Per primum et tertiam variantur *Calchas, Chremes, Laches, Orestes, Orontes, Paschaque schema.*

Per secundam et tertiam variantur *mulciber, sequester, et nomina in es ex Græcis in eus et es ut, Ulysses, Achilles, Hercules, Pericles, Periplectomenes, Ariobarzanæ, Aristoteles, Demosthenes, Euripides* Dempto e Genitivo, adde *Oedipus, Polipus, Glomus, Vesper.*

Per secundam et quartam variata fere fuerunt *adspectus, arcus, æstus, cibus, exercitus, fagus, fastus, fluctus, gemitus, humus, lectus, luctus, ornatus, partus, piscatus, portus, quæstus, somnus, sonus, succus succerus, sumptus, strepitus, tumultus, ventus vulgus, &c.*

Both

Both by the third and fourth Declension are varied, &c. a den provision, staff or a needle.

Both by the third and fifth Declension are varied, &c. hunger, yeomenry, and quietness.

Both by the second and fourth Declension in the Genitive and Ablative cases singular. Also in the Nominative and Accusative plural are &c. a distaff, a corneil tree, a bay tree, and a pine tree, in all other cases they are of the second only.

And Domus a house in the vocative singular: Also in the Nom. Vocat. Dat. and Abl. plural is declined by the fourth Declension.

M. What difference is there between the Genitive case domi, and domus?

J. Domi is ones habitation or dwelling, as, I am at home; but domus is any building, as, part of the house is fallen down.

M. What is the difference between domi, and domo, both signifying at?

J. A Person may be at home, altho not in the house, and so contrary.

A Person may be in a house who is not at home, for example,

When the Master of the house is in his Garden, he is at home but not in the house. And when he is in the house of a stranger he is not at home.

### *Of Genders.*

M. What is Gender?

J. Gender is the distinguishing of Sex.

Per tertiam et quartam inflectuntur, specus, penus, et acus.

Per tertiam et quintam variantur fames, plebes et requies.

Per secundam et quartam in Genitivo et Ablativo singulari. Nominativo etiam, et Accusativo plurali sunt colus, comus, laurus; pinus, cæteris tantum secundæ.

Domus etiam in vocativo singulari, Nominativo etiam Vocativo, Dativo et Ablativo plurali per quartam inflectitur, Cæteris et secundæ et quartæ dicitur.

M. Quænam est differentia inter domi et domus?

J. Domi habitatio est ut, sum domi, domus vero est ædificium ut, pars domus ruit.

M. Quid differentia inter domi et domo?

J. Potest quis esse domi qui non est domo, et vice versa.

Potest quis esse domo qui non est domi, exempli gratia.

Cum paterfamilias est in horto suo est domi, sed non in domo. Et cum est in domo peregrini non est domi.

### *De Generibus.*

M. Quid est genus?

J. Genus est sexus discretio.

M. H



M. How many Genders are there?

J. Genders of Nouns are three.

M. Name them to me?

J. The Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

M. How is Gender known?

J. Genders are known either by the signification or by the Declension.

M. What part of speech is *Apollo*?

J. It is a noun Substantive.

M. What sort of a Substantive.

J. It is a noun Substantive proper.

M. And what kind of a proper Substantive?

J. It is the proper name of the God of Wisdom.

M. Of what Gender is *Apollo*?

J. It is of the Masculine Gender.

M. And how do you know that?

J. Masculines are the names of Gods, Angels, men, People of several countreys, rivers, months, mountains, winds and names which are attributed to the male kind only, as &c. God of wisdom, a good Angel, Sathan, *Martin*, *John*, a Turk, the Thames, April, a mountain in *Asia*, the west-wind, a Cock, a Father, a Bull.

M. Of what Gender is *Fana*?

J. It is of the Feminine Gender?

M. By what rule?

J. Feminines are the names of Goddesses, muses, women, trees,

M. Quot sunt genera?

J. Genera nominum sunt tria.

M. Nomina mihi illa?

J. Masculinum, Fæmininum et Neutrum.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur genus?

J. Genera vel dignoscuntur per significationem vel inflexionem.

M. *Apollo* quæ pars orationis?

J. Est nomen Substantivum.

M. Quale Substantivum?

J. Est Substantivum proprium.

M. Et quale igitur proprium?

J. Est proprium nomen Dei sapientiæ.

M. *Apollo* cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis?

M. Et qui scis?

J. Masculina sunt nomina Divorum, Angelorum, virorum, Populorum, Fluviorum, mensium, montium, ventorum, et quæ maribus dantur ut, *Apollo*, *Sathan*, *Martinus*, *Johannes*, *Turca*, *Thamesis*, *Aprilis*, *Caucasus*, *Zephyrus* Gallus, Pater, taurus.

M. *Fana* cujus generis?

J. Est fæminini generis.

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Fæminina sunt nomina Deorum, Musarum, mulierum, Island,

Islands, Countries, Cities, Villages, and names which are given to the female kind only, as, &c. The goddess of wisdom, a muse, *Mary*, an apple tree, *Brittain*, *Greece*, *Lambeth*, *Chester*, a hen, a mother, a cow, a nurse, a queen, and a sister.

M. Of what Gender is *Infans* an infant?

J. The names and offices of things belonging both to the male and female kind, are of the masculine gender if put for males; but of the feminine if put for females, as, &c. a stranger, a companion, a citizen, an infant, no body and a parent.

Also the names of birds, wild beasts and fishes, are common to both kinds, as, &c. a sparrow, a want or mole, and an oyster.

M. *Rex* a king is derived from *rego* to rule, what gender is *rex*?

J. It is of the Neuter gender, because, Neuters are words which are taken materialy, that is, to signify the word and not the thing, and whatsoever is put instead of a Substantive.

To this rule belongs the names of things without life, as, &c. a burthen, a spur.

M. What Gender is *penna* a penn.

J. It is of Feminine gender, because nouns ending in *a* and *e* of the first declension are Feminines.

But Masculines are &c. a Comet the Sea, a Planet.

M. Of what Gender is *thema* a theme?

J. It is of the Neuter gender, because nouns ending in *a* & *e*

*Arborum*, *insularum*, *regionum*, *urbium*, *villarum* et quæ *fæminis* dantur ut, *Minerva*, *Urania*, *Maria*, *malus*, *Brittannia*, *Græcia*, *Lomithis*, *Devana*, *gallina*, *mater*, *vacca*, *nurus*, *Regina* que *foror*.

M. *Infans* cujus generis?

J. *Nomina officiumque rerum quæ et maribus et fæminis tribuuntur sunt masculini generis si mares indicentur; sed fæmina sunt si fæminæ notentur ut, advena, comes, civis infans et nemo parens.*

*Nomina etiam, avium, ferarum, et piscium communia sunt ut, passer, talpa et ostrea.*

M. *Rex* derivatum est à *rego*. *Rex* cujus generis?

J. *Est neutrius generis quia Neutra sunt dictiones quæ sunt materialiter sumptæ, et qualescunque positum vice substantivi.*

*Huic regulæ appendent nomina innanimata ut, onus, calcar.*

M. *Penna* cujus generis?

J. *Est fæminini generis quia in a et e primæ declinationis fæminina sunt.*

*Masculina vero sunt Cometa, Hadria, planeta.*

M. *Thema* cujus generis?

J. *Est neutrius generis quia in et e tertiæ inflexionis neutra sunt.*

of the third declension are Neuters.

M. Of what gender is gummi gum?

J. It is of the Neuter gender because nouns ending in i, u, y and nouns undeclined called Apototes are neuters.

M. Sermo a speech what Gender?

J. It is of the Masculine gender, because in o in the Nominative case are Masculines.

But Feminines are &c. flesh, jurisdiction, hail, a rebel, a part and a recompence.

Also nouns in io derived of Verbs are Feminine except pugio a dagger.

Also words of three syllables ending in do and go having dinis and ginis in the Gen. case except &c. a well-drag.

M. Of what gender is lac milk?

J. Lac is of the Neuter gender because, nouns in c, l, m, t, and nouns ending in a in the Nom. case plural are Neut.

But Masculines are &c. a Chub, and the Sun.

Sal salt is both Masculine and Neuter.

M. Of what gender is splen the spleen?

J. It is of the masculine gender because nouns in n are masculines.

But Feminines are &c. the kings fisher an Idea or image, fine linnen.

M. Of what gender then is nomen a name?

J. It is of the neuter gender because nouns in men also &c. glew, the groin and a persons nail are neuters.

M. Gummi cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in i, u, y et inflexibilia neutra sunt.

M. Sermo cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in o nominativo masculina sunt.

Fæminina vero sunt caro ditio, grando, perduellio, portioque talio.

In io etiam verbalia sunt Fæminina nisi pugio.

Item trissyllaba in do et go, habentia dinis et ginis in Genitivo, præter harpago.

M. Lac cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in c, l, m, t, et a pluralia nominativo neutra sunt.

Masculina vero sunt mugil et sol.

Et Masculinum et Neutrum est sal.

M. Splen cujus generis?

J. Est Masculini generis quia in n masculina sunt.

Fæminina vero sunt Halcion, icon syndon.

M. Nomen igitur cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia nomina in men, gluten etiam in-guen et unguen neutra sunt.

M. What



M. What gender is calcar a spur?

J. It is of the Neuter gender, because nouns ending in ar, and ur, in the Nom. case are Neuters.

But masculines are &c. bran, a hearth, a young salmon, a turtle and a vulture.

M. Of what gender is carcer a prison?

J. It is of the masculine gender, because nouns ending in er and ir, in the Nom. are masculines.

But feminines are, &c. a little boat, sow bread.

Neuters are &c. a dead carcass, a journey, a buckle, the spring, an udder.

Also the names of fruits and plants as, &c. ginger, a cork tree.

M. Of what gender is rumor a report?

J. It is of the masculine gender because nouns ending in or and ir in the Nom. are masculines.

But Feminine is arbor a tree, and neuters are &c. wheat, the sea, the heart, marble.

M. Tiaras a turban what gender?

J. It is of the masculine gender, because nouns in as, and es of the first declension are Masculine.

But neuters are &c. a Pasty, fænugreek, Anthony's fire.

M. Civitas a city of what gender?

J. It is of the feminine gender because nouns in as of the third declension are feminines.

But masculines are &c. a male a surety, and those nouns which

M. Calcar quod genus?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in ar et ur nominativo neutra sunt.

Masculina vero sunt, furfur, lar, salar, turturque vultur.

M. Carcer cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in er et ir nominativo masculina sunt.

Fæminina vero sunt linter, tuber.

Neutra sunt Cadaver, iter spinter, ver, uber.

Nomina etiam fructuum & plantarum ut, zingiber suber.

M. Rumor cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in or nominativo masculina sunt.

Fæmininum vero arbor, et neutra sunt Ador, æquor, cor, marmor.

M. Tiaras cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in as & es primæ declinationis masculina sunt.

Neutra vero sunt Artocreas Buceras, Erysipelas.

M. Civitas cujus generis?

J. Est fæminini generis quia in as tertæ inflexionis fæminina sunt.

Masculina vero sunt mas, maris vas vadis, & quæ Genitivum

make the Genitive case by *antis*, *as*, &c. a Diamond, name of a hill.

Also as a pound weight with all its parts and compounds ending in *s* or *x as*, &c. a third part five ounces.

Neuters are &c. lawful, a villain, and a vessel.

M. Of what gender is *fames* hunger?

J. It is of the feminine gender because nouns ending in *es* of the third and fifth Declension are Feminine.

Masculines are &c. a scymitar a green turf, a yard, tinder.

A whirlpool, a cross way, a vine branch, a stockdove, a wall and a foot.

The ham, a maggot, a-thwart path, a stalk and a barrow pig.

Neuters are &c. brass, an ill habit of body, witches poison, bugloss, and cow-parship.

Doubtful is *dies* a day.

M. What gender is *corbis* a basket?

J. It is of the Feminine gender because nouns in *is* in the Nominative case are Feminines.

Masculines are &c. a snake, a water pot, and an axle tree.

A causey, a snare, a stalk, a young branch, a little hill and a cucumber.

A dolphin, a sword, any bundle, bellows, a club, a dormouse and a stone.

A month, a chevin, ones birth day, any round thing, to which add a fish.

A post, dust or powder, a rebel, a rival, and blood flowing in the veins.

*per antis ut*, *Adama-s-ntis*, *At-la-s-ntis*.

As *affis etiam cum suis partibus & compositis in s vel x desinentibus ut*, *triens*, *quincunx*.

Neutra sunt *fas*, *nefas* & *vas vasis*.

M. *Fames* cujus generis?

J. *Est fæminini generis quia in es tertiæ & quintæ inflexionis fæminina sunt*.

Masculina sunt *acinaces*, *cespes*, *coles*, *fomes*.

*Gurges*, *limes*, *palmes*, *palumbes*, *paries* et *pes*.

*Poples*, *termes*, *trames*, *stipes* & *verres*.

Neutra sunt *æ* *æris* *cacoethes*, *hippomanes*, *nepenthes* & *panaces*.

*Dubium est dies*.

M. *Corbis* cujus generis?

J. *Est fæminini generis quia in is Nominativo fæminina sunt*.

Masculina sunt *anguis* *aqualis* & *axis*.

*Callis*, *cassis*, *caulis*, *colis*, *collis* *cucumis*que.

*Delphis*, *enses*, *fascis*, *follis* *fuftis*, *glisque*, *lapis*.

*Mensis*, *mugilis*, *natalis*, *orbis* *adde piscis*.

*Postis*, *pulvis*, *rebellis*, *rivalisque* *sanguis*,

A thorn. with a firebrand, and any bar, a worm and a persons nail.

Also all nouns ending in nis, as, fire yet doubtful are &c. a crupper, an end, add a spotted serpent, a ditch and a chain.

M. Of what gender is flos a flower?

J. It is of the masculine gender because nouns ending in os in the Nom. case are masculines.

But Feminines are &c. a tree, a whetstone, a northen constellation, of the morning, a diamiter, and a dowry.

Neuters are &c. a poem, and a mouth, or bone.

M. Of what gender is hortus a garden?

J. It is of the masculine gender because nouns in us of the second and fourth declension are masculines.

But feminines are &c. needle, a bottomless place, a paunch, and two nothern constellations.

A book, silk, costmary, a fine garment, chrystal and a house.

A fig, hyssop, the bare ground, the monthly ides, a hand and a method.

An Ægyptian shrub, an Island a kindred, a porch, and a corn fan.

Doubtful are &c. a green fig, victuals, a pinnace and a cave.

Neuters are &c. the bottom of the sea, and poison.

Vulgus the meaner sort of people is both Masculine and Neuter.

M. Of what gender is crus the leg.

J. It is of the Neuter gender, because nouns in us of the third declension are Neuters.

Sentis cum torris & vestis vermis & unguis.

Omnia etiam in nis ut, ignis dubia vero sunt clunis finis addenchris scrobis, torquis.

M. Flos cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in os nominativo masculina sunt.

Fæminina vero sunt arbor, cos, arctos, eos, diametros & dos.

Neutra sunt epos & os.

M. Hortus cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in us secundæ & quartæ inflexionis masculina sunt.

Fæminina vero sunt acus abyssus, alvus & arctus.

Bibulus, byssus, costus, carbasus, cristallusque domus.

Ficus hyssopus humus, idus manus, methodusque.

Papyrus, pharus, tribus porticusque vannus.

Dubia sunt grossus, penus phaselusque specus.

Neutra sunt pelagus & virus.

Et masculinum & neutrum est vulgus.

M. Crus cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in us tertie inflexionis sunt neutra.

But



But masculines are *lepus* a hare, and nouns which end in *pus* and make *podis* in the Genitive case, as, *polypus* a time server.

Feminines are &c. a crane, herb harefoot, the earth, and nouns which make the Genitive in *ūdis*, *untis*, *ūtis* as, &c. a marsh, the name of a city, and vertue.

M. Of what gender is *laus* praise?

J. It is of the Feminine gender because nouns in *aus* and *ys* by *y* are feminines.

Also feminines are nouns ending in *s* impure, that is, having a consonant before *s*.

But masculines are &c. a two graind fork, a spring, steel, a tooth.

A griffen, the dropfy, a mountain, a bird eating bees, a bridge, a cable, and a blind worm.

Nouns in *ns* are neuters, &c. an accident, young pig, an antecedent.

Doubtful are &c. fatness, a pit, a lineage.

M. Of what gender is *pax* peace?

J. It is of the Feminine gender because nouns ending in *x* in the Nominative case are Feminines.

But masculines are &c. a cup, chalk, a bud, an arch, a flock, a musical instrument, a vein swollen with melancholly blood, and a gardeners tool to work.

Also words of two syllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculines.

But Feminines are &c. a pair of scissers, a herring, a furnace, black and blew, and a sedge.

Doubtful are &c. a dunghil, a snail, and the creeping vine shoot.

Masculina vero sunt *lepus* & *quæ* in *pus* Genitivo etiam *podis* mittunt ut, *polyp-us-odis*.

Fæminina sunt *grus*, *lagopus* *tellus*, & *quæ* Genitivo in *ūdis* *untis*, *ūtis* ut, *palus*, *Opus*, *virtus*.

M. *Laus* cujus generis?

J. Est Fæminini generis quia in *aus*, & *ys* per *y*. fæminina sunt.

Fæminina etiam sunt nomina *quæ* in *s* finiunt præcedente consona ut, *pars*.

Masculina vero sunt *bidens* *fons*, *chalibs dens*.

*Gryps*, *hydrops*, *mons*, *merops*, *pons*, *rudens* & *seps*.

In *ns* neutra sunt ut, *accidens* *nefrens*, *antecedens*.

*Dubia* sunt *adeps*, *scrobs*, *stirps*.

M. *Pax* cujus generis?

J. Est Fæminini generis quia in *x* nominativo fæminina sunt.

Masculina vero sunt *calix*, *calx*, *calyx*, *fornix*, *grex*, *spadix*, *varix*, & *urpix*.

Disyllaba etiam in *ax* & *ex* sunt masculina.

Fæminina vero sunt *forfex*, *halex*, *fornax*, *vibex* que *carex*.

*Dubia* sunt *fimex*, *limax*, & *tradux*.

M. Of

M. Of what gender is *avernus*?

J. These nouns are of the masculine gender in the singular, and of the neuter in the Plural. &c.

Hell, and the names of four hills.

The names of two hills, a hissing, a promontory, hell, and a hills name.

M. Of what gender is *jocus*?

J. These are masculines in the singular number, and both masculine and neuter in the plural.

Hell, sport, and a place.

M. Of what gender is *supellex*?

J. These nouns are fæminines in the singular number, and neuters in the plural, &c.

The sail of a ship, *Jerusalem* the City *Troy*, and household goods.

Also the names of Arts and sciences, &c. Grammar, arithmetic.

M. Of what gender is *Cœlum*?

J. These nouns are neuters in the singular number, and masculines in the plural, &c.

A towns name, heaven, a vetch, paradise, a leek and a skirwort.

M. Of what gender is *rastrum*?

J. These are neuters in the singular number, but both masculine and neuter in the plural, &c.

A head stall, a thrud, a bridle, and a rake.

M. Of what gender is *nundinum*?

M. *Avernus* *cujus generis*?

J. *Hæc maribus dantur singularia plurima neutris.*

*Avermus, Dindymus, Gargarus, Ismarusque, Mænalus.*

*Mafficus, Pangæus, fibilus, Tænerus, Tartarusque, Taygetus.*

M. *Jocus* *cujus generis*?

J. *Mascula sunt primo, mascula & neutra secundo.*

*Infernus jocusque locus.*

M. *Supellex* *cujus generis*?

J. *Singula fæmineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.*

*Carbasus, Hierosolyma, Pergamusque supellex.*

*Item nomina artium ut, Grammatica, arithmetica.*

M. *Cœlum* *cujus generis*?

J. *Mascula pluralia sunt, quæ neutralia primo.*

*Argos, cœlum, cicer, Elysium, porrumque fiser.*

M. *Rastrum* *cujus generis*?

J. *Neutra sunt primo, sed mascula, neutra secundo.*

*Capistrum filum, frænum & rastrum.*

M. *Nundinum* *cujus generis*?

J. These nouns are Neuters in the singular, and Feminines in the plural when they have one, &c. a bath, a delight, a banquet a fair.

M. What difference between, &c. a spider?

J. There is no difference in signification, the following nouns have also divers endings in the Nominative, and some of them change the Declension, some the gender some of them differ in both, and some in neither.

*Nomina propria.*

Adonis, Adoneus. Od-e-a.  
Cat-a-es. Meleag-er-rus.  
Menand-er-rus. Sim-o-on.  
Teuc-er-rus. Thimb-er-rus.

*Nomina Appellativa.*

Acetabul-a-um	a sawcer
Alabastr-er-rum	alabaster
Antidot-us-um	an antidote
Apes, apis	a bee
Aran-ea-eus	a spider
Arbor, arbos	a tree
Attag-en-ena	a snite
Avarit-ia-ies	covetousness
Baculus baculum	a staff
Cepa, cepe	an onion
Concurs-io-us	a concourse
Clypeus clypeum	a buckler
Cinis ciner	ashes
Congrus conger	a conger
Cornu cornum	a horn
Cucumis cucumer	a cucumber
Delp-is-in-inus	a dolphin
Elephas, elephantus	an elephant
Eventus eventum	an event
Gibbus gibber	a bunch on (the back.
Hebdom-as-ada	a week

J. Neutra primo secundæ dæ bunt quæ fæmina primæ plurali. Balneum, delictum, epulum nundinum.

M. Aranea araneus quid differentia?

J. Significatione nihil est differentia, sequentia etiam habent voces diversas nominativo variatione vero jam inflexionem, jam genus, jam utraque jam neutra.

*Nominativo redundantia.*

Agamemn-o-on. Lig-ur-us.  
Amaz-o-on. Evand-er-rus.  
Palem-o-on. Pers-es-eus.  
Uliis-es-eus. Men's names.

*Nominativo redundantia.*

Plebs plebis	common people
Pascha paschas	Easter, passover
Postula-tum-tio	postulation
Pubes puber	mature age
Pulvis pulver	dust or powder
Punctus punctum	a point
Scobis scobs	sawdust, pindust
Sinus, sinum	a milking bowl
Sensus sensum	fence conceit
Senectæ, senectus	old age
Sinapi sinapis	mustard seed
Stipis stipis	wages
Tignus tignum	a rafter
Tape-tum-te-s	tapestry
Tonitrus tonitru	thunder
Vomis vomer	a plowshare
Viscus viscum	birdlime
Lampas lampada	a lamp
Labor labos	labour
Odor odos	scent or savour
Menda mendum	a fault
Materia materies	matter



Honor honos honour  
Juventa juvenus youth

The following Adjectives in is and e abound in the Nom. case by having a masculine Gender in er, viz. of the field, swift, famous, swift, wholesome and sharp.

Of a footman, of a horseman, chearful, of the wood, and of the marsh.

Campester is only the masculine gender.

Campestris is both the masculine and feminine gender.

Campestre is only neuter.

There are some Adjectives which are varied both by two words in the Nominative case and also by three endings, such are the compounds of

Arma weapons, &c. the mind, a little stick, a cliff, a bridle, a yolk, a synew, sleep, for Example,  
Nom. Inermis M. F. Inerme N.  
Nom. Inermus M. Inerma F. Inermum N.

M. Of the Genders which is the most worthy?

J. The masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine is more worthy than the neuter.

But in things not having life or breath, the neuter gender is the most worthy.

### *Of Adjectives.*

M. What is a noun Adjective?

J. A noun Adjective is a word which standeth in need of a Substantive to explain its signification, to which it cleaveth in speech, as, a good, a black, a little, what is good, &c.

Adjectiva sequentia in is et e nominativo superant, per masculinum in er. viz.

Campester, volucer, celebrer, celer atque saluber acer.

Pedester, equester, alacer, sylvester junge paluster, ut,

Campester Masculinum est tantum.

Campestris & masculinum & femininum.

Campestre neutrum est tantum.

Quædam sunt Adjectiva quæ & variantur per duas terminationes & etiam per tres voces ut sunt composita ex.

Arma, animus, bacillum clivus frænum, jugum, nervus somnus verbi gratia  
N. Inermis & inerme vel N. Inermus, inerma inermum.

M. Generum quodnam est dignissimum?

J. Masculinum dignius est feminino & femininum dignius est neutro.

In rebus vero inanimatis neutrum est dignissimum.

### *De Adjectivis.*

M. Quid est nomen Adjectivum?

J. Adjectivum est quod substantivo indiget cui in oratione adhæreat ut, bonus, niger parvus, Quid est bonus, &c.

H

The

The answer must be some person or thing.

M. How is albus declined?

J. Adjectives having three endings in the Nom. case are declined by the first and second declension of substantives.

But all other Adjectives are declined by the third declension, of Substantives according to the following Table.

Praxis.

Exercitium horæ primæ die Mercurij matutino tempore.

Terminationes Adjectivorum trium [duarum] terminationum [unius terminationis] cum paradigma.

Numero Singulari.

us } parvus a small Masc.  
N. a } ut } parva a small Fem.  
um } parvū a small Neu.  
e } parve o little male  
V. a } ut } parva o little female  
um } parvum o little thing  
Ec. per omnes casus utriusque numeris.

is } dulcis a sweet Masc. or  
N. } ut } Fem.  
e } dulce a sweet thing or  
Neut.

Ec. per omnes casus utriusque numeris.

or } dulcior a sweeter M.  
N. } ut } or Fem.  
us } dulcius a more sweet  
Neut. Ec. per omnes casus utriusque numeris.

N. x ut sagax a quick witted M.  
Fem. Neut. Ec. per omnes casus utriusque numeris.

Paulo post diebus.

Substantiva cum adjectivis inflexa per omnes casus, & genera, singulis etiam gradibus comparationis, verbi gratia.

M. Albus unde inflectitur?

J. Adjectiva trium terminationum Nominativo; per primam & secundam inflectionem variantur.

Cætera vero per tertiam inflectionem secundum Tabulam sequentem.

Numero Singulari.

Gen.	N.	V.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	Abl.
Adj. M.	ar, as	ar		is	i	em   e
1. F.	es, or	&c.		is	i	&   vel
Ter. N.	os, x					r   i
	s, im.					Ec.

Adj. M.	is	is		is	i	em   e
F.	&	&		is	i	&   i
N.	e	e				e
2. M.	or	or				em   e
F.	&	&		is	i	&   vel
Ter. N.	us	us				us   i
Adj. M.	r, us	r, e		i	o	um   o
3. F.	a	a		æ	æ	am   a
Ter. N.	um	um		i	o	um   o

Numero Plurali.

Gen.	N.	V.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	Abl.
Adj. M.	es	es				es   ibus
1. F.	&	&		ium	ibus	et   ibus
Ter. N.	ia	ia				ia
Adj. M.	es	es		ium	ibus	es   ibus
F.	&	&				&   ibus
N.	ia	ia				ia
2. M.	es	es		ium	ibus	es   ibus
F.	&	&				&   ibus
Ter. N.	ia	ia				ia
Adj. M.	i	i		orum		os   is
3. F.	æ	æ		arum	is	as   is
Ter. N.	i	a		orum		a

Exer.

Exercitium horæ primæ die Jovis matutino tempore.

Numero singulari Nominativo.  
vir dignus, a worthy man.  
vir dignior, a more worthy man.  
vir dignissimus, the most worthy Man.

*Neutro genere.*

Medicamentum dignum, a convenient medicine.

Medicamentum dignius, a more convenient Medicine.

Medicamentum dignissimum, most convenient medicine, &c. per omnes casus gradus genera & numeros.

M. Why hath albus three endings in the Nominative Case?

J. Adjectives ending in r and us in the Nominative Case, have three endings, the first is masculine, the second is feminine, and the last is neuter, to which add &c. both, and two.

M. Why hath omnis all, or every, two endings in the Nominative Case?

J. Adjectives ending in is, tres, three, and comparatives, have two endings in the nominative case; the first is of the masculine and feminine gender, and the other is neuter.

M. Of what gender is felix, happy?

J. Adjectives ending in ar, as, es or, os, x and s impure, in the Nominative case, have but one ending, which is of all genders.

M. Of what gender is quatuor, four?

J. Cardinal Nouns of number, from four to an hundred, both inclusive are of all genders.

*Genere Fæminino.*

Mulier digna, a worthy woman.

Mulier dignior, a more worthy woman.

Mulier dignissima, the worthiest woman.

*Casu Genitivo.*

Viri digni, of a worthy man.

Viri dignioris, of a worthier man.

Viri dignissimi, of the worthiest man, &c.

M. Albus, alba, album, quare?

J. Adjectiva in r & us nominativo tres habent voces, prima masculini, secunda fæminini, & ultima neutrius generis est, quibus adde ambo & duo.

M. Omnis & omne, quare?

J. Adjectiva in is, tres, & comparativa Nominativo duas habent voces, prima masculini & fæminini, & altera neutrius generis est.

M. Fælix, cujus generis?

J. Adjectiva in ar, as, es, or, os, x & s impurum nominativo unam habent tantum, quæ omnium est generum.

M. Quatuor, cujus generis?

J. Numeralia Cardinalia à quatuor usque ad centum inclusive sunt generis omnis.



## Of Degrees of Comparison.

M. How many degrees of comparison are there?

J. Three, the positive, the comparative, and superlative.

M. Of what degree of comparison is *dulcior*, sweeter, or more sweet?

J. It is of the comparative degree, because comparatives are formed from positives ending in *i*, by adding thereto *or* and *us*, in English it hath *more* before it, *or*, *er* after it.

Superlatives are formed from the same by adding *ssimus*. In English it hath *most* before it, *or*, *est* after it, as, from *duri* is made *duri-or*, and *duri-us*, *duri-ssimus*, hard, more hard, or harder, most hard or hardest.

M. Compare it by degrees through every Case in the feminine gender.

J. N. V. the hard, more hard, most hard F.

Gen. of a hard, of a more hard, of a most hard. F.

M. *Idoneus* fit, in the comparative and superlative degree?

J. More fit, most or very fit.

Because Adjectives which have a Vowel before *us* final, commonly limit the comparative by *magis*, and the superlative by either *maxime* or *valde*.

M. *Ater* black in the superlative?

J. *Aterrimus*, most black, because if the positive endeth in *r*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*.

M. *Facilis* in the superlative degree?

## De Comparationis gradibus.

M. Quot sunt gradus comparationis?

J. Tres, positivus, comparativus & superlativus.

M. *Dulcior*, cujus gradus comparationis?

J. Est comparativi gradus, quia comparativa ex positivis in *i* formantur addendo *or*, & *us*.

Superlativa etiam addendo *ssimus*, ut; ex *duri*, fit *duri-or* & *duri-us*, *duri-ssimus*.

M. Compara per gradus genere foeminino in omnes casus?

J. N. V. *Dura*, *durior*, *durissima*.

Gen. *duræ*, *durioris*, *durissimæ*, &c.

M. *Idoneus*, in comparativo & superlativo?

J. *Magis idoneus*, maxime aut valde *idoneus* quia, Quæ vocalem ante *us* habent, fere circumscribunt comparativum & superlativum voce *magis* & maxime aut valde.

M. *Ater* in superlativo?

J. *Aterrimus*, quia si positivus exit in *r*, superlativus formatur addendo *rimus*.

M. *Facilis*, gradu superlativo?

J. Pa-

J. Facillimus the easiest, because Adjectives ending in lis, do form the superlative, by changing is into limus.

M. Why not bonus, bonior, bonissimus.

J. The following Adjectives are compared quite beside rule ;

Good, better, best.

Bad, worse, worst.

Great, greater, greatest.

Little, less, least.

Much, more, most.

Old, elder, eldest.

Naughty, naughtier, naughtiest.

Ripe, more ripe, most ripe

Reproaching---more---most

Late, more late, most late

Foreign, more strange, most---

Beneath, lower, lowest

Above, higher, highest

Following after, more backward, most backwards

Near, nigher, nighest to us

Within, inward, inmost

Beyond, further off, farthest

Old, elder, eldest.

Long ago, former, first

Near to, nearer, nearest

Rich, richer, very rich.

Also the compounds of volo. and facio, are irregular, as,

Friendly or willingly, more, &c.

Stately or noble, more noble ---

Except strange or wonderful.

M. Compare claudus by degrees ?

These following Adjectives are not compared at all, &c. tame, lame, gray, bald, degenerate, un-

J. Facillimus, quia adjectiva in lis formant superlativum mutando is in limus.

M. Bonus, melior, optimus, quare ?

J. Adjectiva sequentia sunt anigmala.

Bonus, melior, optimus,

Malus, pejor, pessimus,

Magnus, major, maximus,

Parvus, minor, minimus,

Multus } plurimus

Multum } plus } plurimum

Vet-us---erior---errimus

Nequ-am---ior---issimus

Matur-us---ior---issimus vel imus

Maledic-us---entior---entissimus

Nuper-us---ior---rimus

Exter } extremus

Exterus } exterior } extimus

Infer---us---ior } infimus

} imus

Super---us---ior } supremus

} summus

Poster--us--ior } postremus

} posthumus

Cit--er--erior--imus

Inter } interior,

Interus } intimus

Ult-er--erior--imus

Sen-ex--ior, maximus natu

Pridem, prior, primus

Prope, proprior, proximus

Dives, ditior, ditissimus

Composita etiam ex volo & facio, ut

Benevol-us---entior---entissimus

Magnific-us---entior---entissimus

Excipe Mirific-us--issimus

M. Claudus compara per gradus ?

J. Hæc sequentia non comparantur : Cicur, claudus, canus, calvus, degener, dispar, almus,

H 3 like,

like, pure, sound, beggarly, mind-ful, stout, marvellous, fasting, curled, only, doting, melodious, stammering, fierce, somewhat old, alledging, telling the truth, tooth-less, savage, indifferent, with what relates to peculiar Countries, as 1. a *Roman*, a *Grecian*. 2. Possessives, as, brothers, masters.

3. Numerals, as, seven, of three.

4. Diminutives, as, very tender, little.

5. Materials, as, golden, stony, woody.

6. Temporals, as, early, of two years. 7. Also, the compounds of *gero* & *fero*, as, wearing horns, healthful; and those adjectives which end in

1. *Bundus*, as, ready, to dy, loitering.

2. *imus*, as, two, three years old, seafaring.

3. *ivus*, as, taking advice.

4. *plex*, as, twofold, threefold.

5. *iter*, as, of the field, swift or speedy.

M. Deterior, in the positive?

J. It is wanting, but in the superlative it makes, &c. the worst. *ocior* makes *ocissimus*, most swift, and *potior* makes *potissimus*, the best.

M. *Inclytus* in the comparative?

J. The comparative is wanting, in the superlative it makes *inclytissimus*, most renowned, *invictus* hath, &c. most invincible, *novus* has, &c. newest; *meritus* has, &c. most deserved; *sacer* has, &c. most holy; *invitus* hath, &c. most unwillingly; so also, &c. different, false, deceived, persuaded, odious, enquired at, funny, pretty.

*salvus*, *egentus*, *memor*, *magnanimus*, *mirus*, *jejunus*, *crispus*, *unicus*, *delirus*, *canorus*, *balbus*, *ferus*, *vetulus*, *causidicus*, *veridicus*, *edentulus*, *silvestris*, *mediocris cum Gentilibus*, ut, 1. *Romanus*, *Græcus*, &c. 2. Possessiva, ut, *fraternus*, *herilis*.

3. Numeralia, *septimus*, *ternarius*

4. Diminutiva, ut, *tenellus*, *tantillus*.

5. Materialia, ut, *aureus*, *lapideus*, *ligneus*.

6. Temporalia, ut, *matutinus*, *biennis*. 7. Composita etiam a *gero* & *fero*, ut, *corniger*, *salutifer*, & quæ in

1. *Bundus*, ut, *moribundus*, *cunctabundus*.

2. *imus*, ut, *bimus*, *trimus*, *maritimus*.

3. *ivus*, ut, *deliberativus*.

4. *plex*, ut *duplex*, *triplex*.

5. *iter*, ut, *campester*, *volucerr*.

M. Deterior in positivo?

J. *Caret*, sed dat *detrimentum* in superlativo *ocior* dat *ocissimus*, & *potior* *potissimus*.

M. *Inclytus* in comparativo?

J. Deest comparativus, sed *inclytissimus* in superlativo, *invictus*, *invictissimus*, *novus*, *novissimus*, *meritus*, *meritissimus*, *sacer*, *sacerrimus*, *invitus* *invitissimus*, sic etiam *diversus*, *falsus*, *fidus*, *persuassus*, *invisus*, *consultus*, *apricus*, *bellus*.

M. Juve-



M. Juvenis in the superlative ?

J. These adjectives want the superlative, &c. a young man, a young person, young, younger, old, elder, lucky, more propitious, unhappy, more unfortunate, near, more near, full or fruitful, more plentiful, lying on the back, more idle, infinite, more infinite, so silent, common, wholesome, fat or fertile, bending downwards, a far off or strange, and possibly some others may by chance.

Anterior, former, licentior over dissolute, want both the positive and superlative.

M. Juvenis in superlativo ?

J. Hæc superlativo carent, adolescens, adolescentior, juvenis, junior, senex senior dexter dexterior, sinister sinisterior, proximus proximior, satur saturior, supinus supinior, infinitus infinitior, sic taciturnus, communis, salutaris opimus, declivis, longinquus, & fortè alia per-pauca.

Anterior, licentior, & positivo & superlativo carent.

*Of the Species and Figures of Nouns.*

M. What is Species or kind ?

J. Species is the distinction of a primitive, and of a derivative word.

M. How manifold is the species of a Noun ?

J. The species of a Noun is two-fold ; primitive, which is not taken from any other word, as pater a father.

And derivative which is derived, or formed from another, as paterne, fatherly.

M. What is Figure ?

J. Figure is the distinction of a simple and of a compound word.

M. How manifold is Figure ?

J. Figure is twofold ; that is to say, simple, as just ; and compound, as, &c. unjust.

Here it is to be observed,

That a word which is compounded of two nominative cases, is declined in them both ; for Example, Nom. Voc. a Com-

*De Speciebus & Nominum Figuris.*

M. Quid est Species ?

J. Species est distinctionis primitivæ & derivativæ distinctio.

M. Quotuplex est species nominis ?

J. Species nominum est duplex ; primitiva quæ aliunde non trahitur, ut pater.

Et derivativa quæ aliunde formatur, ut paterne.

M. Quid est Figura ?

J. Figura est vocis simplicis, & composita distinctio.

M. Quotplex est Figura ?

J. Figura est duplex, viz. simplex, ut justus ; & composita, ut injustus.

Hic rectè notandum.

Dictio quæ ex duobus nominativis est composita in utriusque variatur, verbi gratiâ.

Nominativo Vocativo, Respublica

monwealth. Gen. of a Commonwealth. Dat. to a Commonwealth, &c.

Except alteruter which only varies uter, and keeps alter fixt.

Also those Nouns which are compounded of a Nom. case, and an oblique is varied in the Nom. only; as Nom. Voc. The master of the house. Gen. of the master of the, &c.

*Of a Pronoun, with things belonging to it.*

M. What is a Pronoun?

J. A Pronoun is that part of speech which we use in relating or rehearsing any matter, as instead of naming persons, we say ego *I*, tu *Thou*, ille *He*.

M. How manifold is a Pronoun?

J. Sixfold, Demonstrative, relative, interrogative, possessive, Gentile and reciprocal.

M. How many Pronouns are there?

J. There are nineteen Pronouns, I, thou, of himself, or of themselves, he, the same, he, this, that, mine, thine, his, who

Which, ours, yours, our country-man, your country-man, to which add, what country-man? add whose? M. F. N.

M. Which of these are Substantives?

J. I, thou, of himself, what thing coming from quis, who All other Pronouns are adjectives.

M. How many are the accidents of a Pronoun?

J. Seven things belong to a Pronoun, Person, Number, Case, Declension, Gender, Species and Figure.

publica. Gen. Rei-publicæ. Dat. Rei-publicæ, &c.

Excipe alteruter, quod variatur ultimo tantum.

Et quæ componuntur ex casu recto & obliquo in nominativo tantum variantur, ut, Nominativo Vocativo, Pater familias.

Gen. Patris familias. Dativo Patri, &c.

*De Pronomine, cum ejus accidentibus, &c.*

M. Quid est Pronomen?

J. Pronomen est pars orationis quâ in demonstranda aut repetenda re aliquâ utimur.

M. Quotuplex est Pronomen?

J. Sextuplex, Demonstrativum, Relativum, Interrogativum, Possessivum, Gentile & Reciprocum.

M. Quot sunt Pronomina?

J. Novendecim sunt Pronomina, ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, is, Hic, iste, meus, tuus, suus, quis,

Qui, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, cum, ejus, quibus, adde cujus, cuja, cujum.

M. Ex his, quæ sunt substantiva?

J. Ego, tu, sui, quid ex quis; cætera sunt adjectiva.

M. Quot accidentia Pronominis?

J. Septem accidunt Pronomini, Personæ, Numerus, Casus, inflexio Genus, Species & Figura.

M. Quot

M. How many Persons are there?

J. Three, I, we, are of the first person, tu, vos and every vocative case are of the second person.

All the rest are of the third person.

The same, he himself, he and who, may be joined to, or agree with any person.

M. Of the persons, which is the most worthy?

J. The first person is more worthy than the second, and the second is more worthy than the third.

M. How many Numbers?

J. Numbers are two, and cases are six, just as in Nouns.

M. How many Declensions?

J. There are four Declensions of Pronouns.

M. Of what Declension is Ego I?

J. I, Thou, of himself, are of the first Declension, and they make the Genitive end in i.

Which together with their compounds are thus declined.

M. Quot sunt personæ?

J. Tres, primæ, ego, nos. Secundæ, tu, vos, & omne vocativum.

Cætera sunt tertiæ personæ.

Idem, ipse, is & qui omnibus personis jungi possunt.

M. Personarum quænam est dignissima?

J. Prima persona dignior est secundâ: & secunda dignior est tertiâ.

M. Quot sunt numeri?

J. Numeri sunt duo, & casus sunt sex, sicut in nominibus.

M. Quot sunt inflexiones?

J. Declinationes Pronominis sunt quatuor.

M. Ego, cujus inflexionis?

J. Ego, tu, sui, sunt primæ inflexionis, & habent i Genitivo.

Quæ cum suis compositis hoc modo variantur.

I wanting of me to me me with me	Nom. Voc. Gen. Dat. Accu. Ablat	We wanting of us to us us with us	Ego caret mei mihi me me	N V G D Ac Abl	Nos câret nostrum vel nostri nobis nos nobis
Thou o thou of thee to thee thee from thee	Nom. Voc. Gen. Dat. Accu. Ablat	Ye o ye of you to you you by you	tu tu tui tibi te te	N V G D Ac Abl	vos vos vestrum vel vestri vobis vos vobis



Both in the singular and plural number.	N. V.	are wanting	Numero singulari & plurali.	NV	<i>caret</i>
	Gen.	of himself		Ge.	<i>sui</i>
	Dat.	to himself		Da.	<i>sibi</i>
	Aceu.	himself		Ac.	<i>se</i>
	Ablat	from himself or themselves		Abl	<i>se</i>

M. Of what Declension is hic, he, or this.

J. Of the Second Declension are this, he, who, he, the same, and they make the Genitive case singular in us.

M. Decline hic, is, and qui?

M. Hic cujus inflexionis?

J. Secundæ inflexionis sunt, hic, is, qui, ille, ipse, iste, & dant us Genitivo.

M. Hic, is, qui inflecte.

This M F N	N. these M F N	hic, hæ, hoc	N.	hi, hæ, hæc
is wanting	V	is wanting	V	caret
of this M F N	G.	of these	G.	horum harum horum
to this M F N	D.	to these	D.	his
this M F N	Ac	these M F N	Ac.	hos, has, hæc
From this, &c	Ab	for these	Ab	his

that M F N	N.	those	is, ea, id	N.	ij, eæ, ea
wanting	V	is wanting	caret	V	caret
of that M F N	G.	of those	ejus	G.	eorum, earum, eorum
to that M F N	D.	to those	ei	D.	eis, vel iis
that M F N	Ac	those M F N	eum, eam, id	Ac	eos, eas, ea
in that M F N	Ab	by those, &c.	eo, eâ, eo	Ab	eis, vel iis

which	N.	which M F N	Qui, quæ, quod	N.	Qui, quæ, quæ
wanting	V	is wanting	caret	V	caret
of which	G.	of which	cujus	G.	quorum, quarum, quorum
to which	D.	to which	cui	D.	quibus vel queis
which M F N	Ac	which M F N	quem, quam, quod	Ac.	quos, quas, quæ,
thrò wch. &c.	Ab	with which	quo, quâ, quo	Ab	quibus vel queis

M. Ille in the neuter Gender of the nominative?

Illud, because ille, iste, and the noun alius another, make the neuter Gender in the nominative case singular in ud.

M. What difference between ille, iste, hic, having the same signification?

M. Ille in neutro nominativo?

J. Illud. quia ille, iste, & nomen alius faciunt neutrum nominativo singulari in ud.

M. Quid differentia inter ille, iste, hic?

J. Ille

J. Ille signifies a Person or Thing excellent, iste abject or despised, and hic near at hand.

M. Of what Declension is meus?

J. Of the third declension are &c. mine, thine, his, our, your, whose, and the Genitive case endeth in i, æ, i, because they are varied by three words.

M. Of what Declension is nostras?

J. Of the fourth declension are, &c. our Country-man, your Country-man, what Country-man, and the Genitive ends in âtis, being declined after the third declension of nouns.

M. Of what Gender is Ego I?

J. I, thou, of himself, or of themselves are referred to all the three Genders.

M. Why is qui Masc. quæ fem. quod Neuter?

J. Pronoun adjectives are declined by three Genders, as nouns adjectives are.

M. Amongst the kinds of Pronouns, which are Primitives?

J. I, thou, of himself, he, the same. he, this, that, are Primitives; all the rest are derivatives, because they spring from the primitives.

M. How manifold is the Figure of a Pronoun?

J. It is two-fold, simple, as, Ego I.

Compound as, &c. I my self, with me, pte, te, me, met, are syllables added to the end of a word, thereby compounded for the better expressing the thing signified.

J. Ille excellentiam, iste contemptum, & hic proximum significant.

M. Meus, cujus inflexionis?

J. Tertiæ inflexionis sunt meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, cujus & Genitivus exit in i, æ i, quia per tres voces variantur.

M. Nostras cujus Declinationis?

J. Quartæ inflexionis sunt nostras, vestras, cujas & Genitivus exit in âtis, quia per tertiam inflexionem variantur nominum.

M. Ego, cujus generis?

J. Ego, tu, sui, ad tria genera referuntur.

M. Qui, quæ, quod, quare?

J. Pronomina adjectiva per tria genera variantur, ut in adjectivis nominum.

M. In speciebus pronominum quæ sunt primitivæ.

J. Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, is, hic, iste sunt primitivæ, cætera sunt derivativa quia ex his derivantur.

M. Figura pronominis quotuplex?

J. Duplex est, simplex, ut, ego, me.

Composita ut, egomet, mecum, pte, te, met; Syllabæ sunt adjectivæ verbis compositis Emphasis causâ.

*Concerning Verbs, with what belongs to them.*

M. What is a Verb ?

J. A Verb is a word declinable by Moods and Tenses, whereby the doing, the suffering, or being of a substantive is signified.

M. How manifold is a Verb ?

J. A Verb is two-fold, personal and impersonal.

M. What is a Verb personal ?

J. A Verb personal is a word which is distinguished by three persons in both Numbers.

M. What is a Verb impersonal ?

J. A Verb impersonal is a word which wants the first and second person in both numbers.

But a verb impersonal of the passive voice may indifferently be taken for every person of either number ; as, where do I begin, where do you begin, where doth he begin, where do we begin, where do ye begin, where do they begin ?

A verb impersonal wants the Supines and the Gerunds.

M. How many are the accidents of a verb ?

J. Eight things belong to a verb, Kind, Mood, Tense, Conjugation, Number, Person, Species and Figure.

*Of the kind of Verbs.*

M. How many sorts of verbs are there ?

J. There are four kinds of verbs, Active, Passive, Neuter and Deponent.

M. What is a verb active ?

*De Verbis, cum Accidentibus.*

M. Quid est Verbum ?

J. Verbum est vox variabilis per modos & tempora, quo Actionem, Passionem vel Essentiam substantivi significatur.

M. Quotplex est verbum ?

J. Duplex, Personale & Impersonale.

M. Quid est verbum personale ?

J. Verbum personale est quod in utroque numero tribus personis distinguitur.

M. Quid est verbum impersonale ?

J. Verbum Impersonale est quod caret primâ & secundâ personâ utriusque numeris.

Verbum impersonale vero vocis passivæ pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, ut, ubi incipitur à me, à te, ab illo, à nobis, à vobis, ab illis ?

Verbum etiam impersonale supinis & Gerundij vocibus caret.

M. Quot sunt accidentia verbi ?

J. Octo accidunt verbo, Genus, Modus, Tempus, Conjugatio, Numerus, Persona, Species & Figura.

*De genere Verborum.*

M. Quot sunt genera verborum ?

J. Genera verborum sunt quatuor, Activum, Passivum, Neutrum & Deponens.

M. Quid est verbum activum ?



J. A verb active is a word which signifies to do, and in the first person of the Indicative Mood present tense singular ends in o; and it can form a passive in or, as; audio I hear, is active; audior I am heard is passive.

M. How do you know a verb passive?

J. A verb passive is a word which signifies to suffer, and ends in or, but may become an active by taking away the r, as, &c. I am heard, I do hear.

M. How is a verb neuter known?

J. A verb neuter is a word which ends in o or in m, as, &c. I drink, I am. But can neither become wholly active, nor wholly passive both in signification and termination.

But verbs neuter very often usurp the third person of the passive voice, as, *vinum bibitur*, wine is drank.

M. How is a Verb Deponent known?

J. A Verb Deponent is a word which ends in or, but hath usually an active signification, as, loquor, I speak; but r is never taken away as in passives.

A Deponent also hath Gerunds and supines like an active, which a passive hath not.

### *Of the Moods.*

M. How many Moods are there?

J. There are four Moods, the Indicative, the Imperative, the Conjunctive, and the Infinitive.

M. How is the Indicative known?

J. Activum est quod agere significat, & in o finitum passivum in or, etiam formare potest, ut, audio, audior.

M. Unde dignoscitur passivum?

J. Passivum est quod pati significat, & in or finitum activi formam r dempto resumere potest, ut, audior, audio.

M. Unde dignoscitur Neutrum?

J. Neutrum est quod in o vel in m finitum, ut bibo, sum; sed nec activam, nec passivam formam integrè induere potest.

Tertiam autem personam passivæ vocis sæpissime usurpant, ut *vinum bibitur*.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur Deponens?

J. Deponens est quod in or finitum, significationem vero activam fere usurpat, ut, loquor, sed r nunquam est absumptum.

Deponens etiam habet Gerundia & supina passiva vero non.

### *De Modis.*

M. Quot sunt Modi?

J. Modi sunt quatuor, Indicativus, Conjunctivus, Imperativus, & Infinitivus.

M. Unde dignoscitur Indicativus?

J. Verbs of mentioning, affirming, denying and demanding, we use to put in the Indicative Mood.

M. How is the Conjunctive known?

J. Verbs of wishing and desiring we use in the Conjunctive Mood, wherein also we signify a thing able or willing, or which ought to be done.

M. Why do you say, I askt you, that you would come to me. (not)?

J. When two verbs come together with (to) between them, the latter is put into the Conjunctive Mood, with ut, that, provided one of them be, &c. to beware, to advise, to desire, to do, to exhort, to warn, to pray, to ask, or their compounds, as,

I desire you to have a care.

I require you to do this thing.

I require you to be more diligent for the time to come.

I have advised thy Brethren to be more attentive in Church.

I will not have you do this, &c.

M. Why do you say, I know not whether he be white or black (not)?

J. Because the Conjunctions, &c. and, either, and, or, not, neither, unless, how, besides, and, also, or whether, or, or, couple like cases and moods, as for Example:

He is not so old as you are.

My Father and Mother are angry.

M. Why do you say, &c. I question not but you understand this matter.

J. The Conjunctions ut, that, quo, to the end that, quin but, require a Conjunctive Mood;

J. Verba narrandi, affirmandi, negandi & interrogandi utimur indicativo.

M. Unde Conjunctivus dignoscitur?

J. Verba optandi & cupiendi utimur conjunctivo: quo possetiam & velle, aut debere fieri aliquid significamus.

M. Quare dicis rogavi te ut ad me venires (non) ad me venire?

J. Quando duo verbo junguntur cum (ad) intercedente, posterius in Conjunctivum ponitur, cum ut, modo de illis unum sit caveo, consulo, cupio, facio, hortor, moneo, oro, rogo vel composita.

Exempli gratia.

Volo ut caveatis

Rogo ut hoc faciatis

Rogo ut vos sitis posthac diligentiores.

Hortatus sum tuos fratres ut essent attentiores in Templo.

Nolo ut hoc agas, &c.

M. Quare dicis albus an ater sit nescio (non) atro?

J. Quia similes casus & modos postulant, ac, an, atque, aut, neque, nisi, quam, præterquam, que, quoque, seu, five, ve, vel.

Verbi Gratiâ.

Est minor natu quam tu.

Pater & Mater sunt irati.

M. Quare dicis non dubito quin hoc intelligas?

J. Conjunctiones ut, quo, quin Conjunctivum adsciscunt; etsi præsens vel futurum præ-

and if a present or future tense went before, the present tense of the Conjunctive follows; but if the preter tense go before the imperfect tense of the conjunctive follows.

M. Why do you say, &c. what are you doing? see what you do.

J. Because Interrogatives when they demand, require to be put into the Indicative Mood, but when they do not ask a question, the conjunctive.

M. Why do you say, &c. I am glad because thou art come. I have written that thou mightest come? The difference between quod and ut is required, they both signifying (that)?

J. Quod signifies the same as quia, because, and is used about things past.

But ut, signifies the same with eo fine, for the end or purpose, and we use it about things to come.

After verbs of being afraid of, ut signifies negatively; but ne after those verbs signifies affirmatively.

I fear I shall not be able to accomplish this matter.

I was afraid lest the Master should come.

M. How is the Imperative Mood known?

J. Verbs of commanding, advising, praying, forbidding and permitting, are placed in the Imperative Mood.

It hath a double present tense, the first signifies more immediately than the latter, as, &c. do thou read; all other tenses are wanting; and so is the first person singular.

dit, præsens conjunctivi sequitur; si vero præteritum præcesserit imperfectum conjunctivi sequitur.

M. Quare dicis, quid agis? vide quid agas.

J. Interrogativa quando interrogant Indicativum adsciscunt; sed quando non interrogant conjunctivum.

M. Quare dicis gaudeo quod venires. Scripsi ut veniris?

J. Quod idem valet ac quia, & de præteritis usurpatur, ut, vero valet eo fine, Et in rebus futuris utimur.

Ut negative significat post verba timendi.

Ne autem affirmative, ut, metuo ut possim hoc efficere.

Timebam ne Præceptor veniret.

M. Unde dignoscitur Imperativus?

J. Verba imperandi, hortandi, orandi, prohibendi, & permitendi modo Imperativo sunt collocata.

Præsens habet duplex, ut, lege, legito; cætera desunt tempora prima etiam persona singulari.

M.



M. How is the Infinitive Mood known?

The latter of two Verbs, having no conjunction between, is put in the Infinitive mood, as, &c. He will not know how to speak, who knows not how to hold his peace.

M. Why do you say, &c. Thou knowest that I have always been thy friend (not)?

J. The conjunction (that) coming between two Verbs, (that) is cast away; and with an accusative case set before (which might be resolved into a nominative, to come before that verb) the later is put into the Infinitive Mood, as,

I hear that thou art a diligent Boy.

I hope that I shall be loved by you.

To this infinitive mood belongs three Gerunds ending in di, do, dum. Also two Supines, ending in um and u; and Participles, whereof we will treat in their proper place.

Gerunds, Supines and Participles, require or govern the same case those verbs do from whence they come. Gerunds want the plural.

M. Why do you say, it is time to breakfast (not)?

J. The latter verb signifying the present tense of the infinitive mood active, is made by the Gerund in di, provided between those verbs be put, &c. love, cause, custom, counsel, desire, end.

Favour, carried, expert, pattern, manner, opportunity, idleness.

Occasion, knowing, power, rea-

M. Infinitivus unde dignoscitur?

J. Posterius verbum absque conjunctione infinitivo ponitur, ut; loqui ignorabit, qui tacere nescit.

M. Quare dicis scis me semper fuisse tuum amicum (non) scis quod ego semper fui?

J. Conjunctio (quod) inter duo verba contingens (quod) rejicitur: & cum accusativo antecedente (quod in nominativum resolveretur) alterum ponitur infinitivum, ut,

Audio te esse puerum diligentem.

Spero me amatum iri a vobis.

Huic modo infinitivo appendent tria Gerundia in di do dum, finita. Duo etiam Supina in um & u. Item Participia de quibus suo loco.

Gerundia, Supina & Participia, regunt casus suorum verborum. Gerundia carent plurali.

M. Quare dicis tempus est jentandi (non) jentare?

J. Posterius verbum infinitivi significantia praesens fit per Gerundium in di modo interposita sint amor, causa, consuetudo, consilium, cupidus, eventum.

Gratia, gestus, gnarus, norma, modus, opportunitas, otium.

Occasio, peritus, potestas, ratio

son, hope, fulness, studdy.  
Time, force or strength, and  
will, as,

Thou shalt have an opportunity  
to see thy Parents (not)

He is skilful to write (not)

He is sure to go because he  
hath a desire to see.

M. Why do you say, by writing  
you will learn to write (not)?  
or you will learn to write by writing?

J. Because words signifying the  
ablative case of the participle of  
the present tense, (provided they  
follow verbs,) are made by Gerunds  
in do, and very often with  
præpositions, as,

Slothful Boys are soon discouraged  
from Learning.

M. Why do you say, I came to  
ransom or redeem thee (not)?

J. Gerunds in dum follows  
verbs, but are governed or depend  
on Præpositions governing  
the accusative case; and they  
signifie either the infinitive mood  
active, or the participle of the  
present tense, as,

Be ye merry at Supper-time.

A most large place to plead in.

But if necessity be signified, the  
Gerunds in dum are put absolute,  
(that is, they are governed of nothing)  
the verb est being added,  
which is sometimes expressed, and  
sometimes understood, as, I must  
go hence (not).

We must pray that there may  
be a sound mind in a sound body.

M. How came you indifferently  
to say, I am going to Supper?  
&c.

J. Because the first supine;  
also participles of the future tense

tio, spes, satietas, Studium.  
Tempus, visque, voluntas, ut,

Erit tibi opportunitas videndi  
parentes (non) videre.

Est peritus scribendi (non)  
scribere.

Est certus eundi, quia cupidus  
visendi.

M. Quare dicis scribendo discas  
scribere (non) per scribentem?

J. Quia dictiones participii  
præsentis significantes ablativum,  
(modo sequuntur verba,) fiunt per  
Gerundia in do, & sæpissime cum  
præpositionibus, ut,

Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur.

M. Quare dicis veni propter  
te redimendum (non) redimere?

J. Gerundia in dum sequuntur  
verba, sed pendent ex præpositionibus  
accusativum regentibus, &  
significant vel Infinitivum activi  
vel participium præsentis, ut,

Inter cœnandum hilares este?

Locus amplissimus ad agendum  
est.

Si necessitas vero significatur  
Gerundia in dum absolute ponuntur  
addito verbo est expresso vel intellecto,  
ut, abeundum est mihi (non) oportet  
me hinc abire.

Orandum est ut sit mens sana  
in corpore sano.

M. Quare indifferenter dicis,  
eo cœnatum, eo cœnaturus, vel eo  
ad cœnandum?

J. Quia prius supinum, participia  
etiam futuri in rus &

K Ge.

in rus, and Gerunds, signifie actively, and follow Verbs; and participles signifying motion to a person, or place, or thing, as,

I am coming to teach my Schollars.

Yesterday I went to see your Study.

M, Why do you say, he is worthy to be approved (not)?

J. The latter Supine signifies passively, and follows adjectives and verbs also which signifie motion from a place, person or thing, as,

It is hard to be said---done---read---written---moved.

He ariseth from Bed, or he listeth up himself in Bed.

He returneth from Hunting.

*Of the Tenses, and several other Things.*

M. How many Tenses of Verbs are there?

J. There are five tenses or times, the present, the imperfect past, perfect past, more than perfect past, and the time to come.

M. How are the Tenses known?

J. In the English Tongue, the tenses are known by their signs; but in Latine by the terminations in the Moods.

M. Give the English signs of tenses.

*The Present Tense.*

*Active*, do, dost, doth.

*Passive*, am, art, is, are.

*Imperfect Tense.*

*Active*, did, didst

*Passive*, was, wast, were

Gerundia in dum, activè significant, & succedunt verba vel participia motum ad locum significantia, ut,

Venio doctum discipulos meos.

Heri ibam ad te visurus museum tuum.

M. Quare dicis dignus est spectatu, (non) spectari?

J. Posterius Supinum passive significat, & sequitur adjectiva, & etiam verba motum de loco significantia, ut,

Est difficile dictu---factu---lectu scriptu---motu---

Surgit Cubitu.

Redit venatu.

*De Temporibus, & multis aliis.*

M. Quot sunt tempora verborum?

J. Quinque sunt tempora, præsens, imperfectum, perfectum, plusquam perfectum & futurum.

M. Unde dignoscuntur tempora?

J. Anglice dignoscuntur signis; Latine vero modis.

M. Redde signa Anglicana?

J. The Indicative mood has no sign at all.

The Conjunctive mood in the present and future tense hath may or can active.

*Perfect*



*Perfect Tense.*

*Active*, have, hast, hath

*Passive*, have been, &c.

*Pluperfect Tense.*

*Active*, hast, hadst

*Passive*, had been, &c.

*Future Tense.*

*Active*, shall---t will---t

*Passive*, shal---t be, wil---t be

The present tense is that time wherein an action now to be done, or a doing, is signified, as, I hear, I am heard, or, I am hearing.

The preterimperfect tense is that time wherein an action is not as yet perfected, or ended, as, I did write, I was a writing.

The preterperfect tense is that time wherein an action past and perfected is signified, as, I have written, I have been a writing.

This tense with those springing from it, is double in verbs ending in or, the first wherein a thing just past is expressed, as, I have been a writing, just now.

And the later, wherein is declared a thing done or past a good while ago, as, I have been taught.

If a passive English is to be rendred by a Latine Neuter, then the present tense English is made by the perfect tense Latine, and the imperfect tense English by the pluperfect tense Latine, as,

When we were set.

Being we are sate upon the soft Grass.

The preterpluperfect tense is

In the other tenses it hath *might, would, could, should* or *ought*, active.

The Imperative hath *let* in 3 Persons.

The Infinitive Mood hath *to*.

The *active* signs of the moods become *passive* by post-poning *be*, been.

Præsens est quo nunc geri actio significatur, ut, audio, audior.

Imperfectum est quo actio nondum perfecta significatur, ut, scribebam, scribebar.

Perfectum est quo præterita & absoluta significatur actio, ut, scripsi, scripsus sum.

Verbis in or, hoc tempus cum suo prole est duplex; alterum quo proxime præteritum exprimitur ut, scripsus sum.

Et alterum quo ulterius præteritum iudicatur, ut, doctus fui.

Si Passivum Anglicanum per Neutrum Latinum translaturum tunc præsens Anglice fit per perfectum Latine; & Imperfectum Anglice, per plusquam perfectum Latine, ut,

Cum consedissimus (non) consedebamus.

Quondoquidem in molli consedimus herba.

Plusquam-perfectum est quo actio

that time wherein an action past long ago, is signified, as, I had written, I had been a writing.

The future tense is that time wherein a matter to be atchieved in time to come is signified, as, I will write, I will be a writing.

### Of Conjugations.

M. How many Conjugations ?

J. Conjugations are four.

The first conjugation ends in o, and hath a consonant standing before it, and hath ā every where long before re and ris.

The second Conjugation also ends in o with ē standing before it, which is also long before re and ris.

M. Are all verbs that end in eo, of the second conjugation ?

J. No, for of the first conjugation are, to bless, to put shoes on, to create, to take out the kernel, to entangle, to pass, to loath, to hawk up, with their compounds.

Eo I go, and Queo I am able, with their compounds, are of the fourth conjugation.

The third conjugation also ends in o, with a consonant before it, but hath ē always short before re and ris.

The fourth conjugation ends in o with ī before it, which is every where long before re and ris.

M. Are all verbs that end in io of the fourth conjugation ?

J. No, for of the first conjugation are, to enlarge, to kiss wantonly, to make wretched, to divide into hundreds, to torment, to divide into bands, to make

actio jamdiu præterita significatur, ut, scripseram, scripsus eram.

Futurum est quo res in futuro gerenda significatur, ut, scribam, scribar.

### De Conjugationibus.

M. Quot sunt Conjugationes ?

J. Conjugationes sunt quatuor.

Prima exit in o præcedente consona, & habet ā ubique longum ante re & ris.

Secunda etiam exit in o cum ē præcedente, quod est ubique longum ante re & ris.

M. Sunt ne omnia verba in eo secundæ Conjugationis ?

J. Non, nam primæ conjugationis sunt, beo, calceo, creo, enucleo, laqueo, meo, nauseo, screo, suis compositis.

Eo & queo cum compositis sunt quartæ conjugationis.

Tertia exit in o impuro, ubique vero habet ē breve ante re & ris.

Quarta exit in o cum ī præcedente quod ubique est longum, ante re & ris.

M. Suntne omnia verba in io, quartæ conjugationis ?

J. Non, Nam primæ conjugationis sunt amplio, basio, calimidio, centurio, crucio, decurio

learn  
mac  
in p  
to f  
sup  
wou  
to  
deck  
C  
&c.  
dig  
brin  
to b  
M  
whe  
very  
J  
my  
  
E  
Ven  
T  
cum  
gati  
pori  
E  
Ma  
o  
  
L  
mus  
I  
prai  
or  
amin  
L  
laud  
laud  
I  
prai  
  
ab  
aban  
laud  
tis, l  
they

lean, to make bundles, to make mad, to congeal, to gape, to cut in peices, to report, to honour, to shine, to do like for like, to supply number, to make salt, to wound, to accompany, to dream, to spoil, to turn and breath, to deck, to infect.

Of the Third Conjugation are, &c. to take, to desire, to make, to dig, to flee, to cast, to entice, to bring forth, to shake, to snatch, to behold, with their compounds.

M. Pray shew me a form whereby most verbs in o may be very easily conjugated?

J. I will oblige you with all my heart.

*Praxi.*

Exercitium horæ primæ die Veneris, matutino tempore,

Terminationes vocis activæ unâ cum passivâ per quatuor conjugationes in omnibus modis, temporibus, numeris & personis.

Et primò conjugatio prima.

*Modi Indicativi. Tempus præsens.*

o, as, at, amus, atis, ant.

Verbi gratiâ.

Laudo, laudas, laudat, laudamus, laudatis, laudant. Anglice, I, thou, he, we, ye, they do praise.

or, aris vel are, atur, amur, amini, antur. Exempli gratiâ.

Laudor, laudaris vel laudare, laudatur, laudamur, laudamini, laudantur.

I, thou, he, we, ye, they are praised.

*Tempus imperfectum.*

abam, abas, abat, abamus, abatis, abant; ut, laudabam, laudabas, laudabat, laudabamus, laudabatis, laudabant. I, thou, he, we, ye, they did praise.

rio, emacio, fascio, furio, glacio, hio, latio, nuncio, pio, radio, retatio, succenturio, salio, saucio, socio, somnio, spolio, strio, vario, vitio.

Tertiæ Conjugationis sunt capio, cupio, facio, fodio, fugio, jacio, lacio, pario, quatio, rapio, sapio, specio, cum compositis.

M. Præbe mihi quæso Schema quo omnia fere verba in o facillime sint conjugata.

J. Tibi obsequar ex animo.

*Modus Indicativus activæ vocis.*

*Tempus Præsens.*

<i>Pers.</i>	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pass.</i>	r.	ris,	re.	tur.	mur.	mini.
				tur		
1.	Voc--o--as--at--amus--atis--ant					
2.	Ten--eo--es--et--emus--etis--ent					
3.	Dic--o--is--it--imus--itis--unt					
4.	Audi--o--is--it--imus--itis--iunt					

*Tempus Imperfectum.*

1.	aba--m--s--t--mus--tis--nt
2.	eba--m--s--t--mus--tis--nt
3.	eba--m--s--t--mus--tis--nt
4.	ieba--m--s--t--mus--tis--nt

*In omnibus Conjug.*

*Tempus Perfectum.*

i--isti--it--imus--istis } erunt  
ere

*Plusquam-perfectum.*

era--m--s--t--mus--tis--nt  
*Observe.*

*Tempus Futurum.*

1.	ab	o	is	it	imus	itis	unt
2.	eb	o	is	it	imus	itis	unt
3.	am	es	et		emus	etis	ent
4.	iam	ies	iet		iemus	ietis	ient

*Modus*



Abar, abaris vel abare, abatur, abamur, abamini, abantur, ut,

Laudabar, laudabaris, vel laudabare, laudabatur, laudabamur, laudabamini, laudabantur.

I, thou, he, we, ye, they were praised,

*Tempus perfectum.*

i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt vel *eré*; ut, ego laudavi, tu laudavisti, ille laudavit, nos laudavimus, vos laudavistis, illi laudaverunt vel laudavere. I, thou, he, we, ye, they have praised.

Tus sum vel fui; tus es vel fuisti; tus est vel fuit; ti sumus vel fuimus; ti estis vel fuistis; ti sunt fuerunt vel fuere: ut,

Laudatus sum vel fui; laudatus es vel fuisti; laudatus est vel fuit; laudati sumus vel fuimus; laudati estis vel fuistis; laudati sunt fuerunt vel fuere.

I, thou, he, we, ye, they have been praised, &c. *Secundum inscriptionem,*

*Praxis.*

Exercitium horæ primæ die Saturni matutino tempore.

Cognata tempora activæ & passivæ vocis per quatuor conjugationes. Et primò primæ personæ, primæ conjugationis.

*Præsens cum prole.*

Laudo, laudabam, laudabo; laudem, laudarem, laudare; laudandi, laudando, laudandum, laudans. I praise, I did praise, I shall, &c.

Laudor, laudabar, laudabor, lauder, laudarer, laudari, laudandus. I am praised, I was, &c.

*Perfectum cum prole.*

**Modus Conjunctivus.**

*Tempus Præsens.*

*Ego tu ille nos vos illi*

- |    |    |    |    |      |          |          |
|----|----|----|----|------|----------|----------|
| 1. | am | es | et | emus | etis     | ent      |
| 2. | e  | am | as | at   | amus     | atis ant |
| 3. | am | as | at | amus | atis ant |          |
| 4. | i  | am | as | at   | amus     | atis ant |

*Tempus Imperfectum.*

- |    |     |   |   |   |     |        |
|----|-----|---|---|---|-----|--------|
| 1. | are | m | s | t | mus | tis nt |
| 2. | ere | m | s | t | mus | tis nt |
| 3. | ere | m | s | t | mus | tis nt |
| 4. | ire | m | s | t | mus | tis nt |

*In omnibus Conjug.*

*Tempus Perfectum.*

eri m s t mus tis nt

*Plusquam Perfectum.*

isse m s t mus tis nt

*Tempus Futurum.*

er o is it imus itis int

*Observe.*

**Modus Imperativus.**

*Habet Præsens duplex.*

Tu ille Nos Vos Illi.

- |    |     |     |       |   |       |       |
|----|-----|-----|-------|---|-------|-------|
| 1. | a   | et  | emus  | { | ate   | ent   |
|    | ato | ato |       |   | atote | anto  |
| 2. | e   | eat | eamus | { | ete   | eant  |
|    | eto | eto |       |   | etote | ento  |
| 3. | e   | at  | am us | { | ite   | ant   |
|    | ito | ito |       |   | itote | unto  |
| 4. | i   | iat | iamus | { | ite   | iant  |
|    | ito | ito |       |   | itote | iunto |

**Modus Infinitivus. Tempus**

*Præsens & Imperfectum.*

1. *äre.* 2. *ëre.* 3. *ëre.* 4. *ïre.*

*Perfectum & Plusquam-perfect.*

Omnium *isse, ut, dixisse.*

*Tempus Futurum.*

*Singulariter* urum, uram, urum.

*Pluraliter* uros, uras, ura esse. laudavi,

Laudavi, laudaveram, laudaverim, laudaviffem, laudavero, laudaviffie, laudatum, laudatu, laudatus, laudaturus.

I have praised, I had praised, I should have praised, &c.

Laudatus sum vel fui, laudatus eram vel fueram, laudatus fim vel fuerim, laudatus effem vel fuiſſem, laudatus ero vel fuero, laudatum eſſe vel fuiſſe, laudatum iri vel laudandum eſſe, I have been, &c.

M. But whence are verbs in or formed?

J. Verbs ending in or in the preſent tenſe, and in all the tenſes derived from it, are formed from the active voice:

1. By adding r to o, whereſoever it is found.
2. By changing m into r.
3. By changing s into ris and re.
4. By changing t into tur.
5. By changing mus into mur.
6. By changing tis into mini.
7. By changing te into mini.
8. By changing tote into minor.

9. By changing e into i in the infinitive mood. But in the third conjugation ere is changed into i, as, to read, to be read.

10. The Future Tenſe of the infinitive mood is made of the participle of the præter tenſe, with iri, or of the future in dus, with eſſe, as, to be loved hereafter.

11. In the ſecond perſon of the preſent tenſe of the third conjugation.

Alſo in the ſecond perſon of the future tenſe in the Indicative mood of the firſt and ſecond con-

*Gerundia.*

- |          |       |         |
|----------|-------|---------|
| 1. andi  | ando  | andum   |
| 2. endi  | endo  | endum   |
| 3. endi  | endo  | endum   |
| 4. iendi | iendo | iendum. |

*Supina.*

Prius um. Poſterius u.

*Participia.*

Præſentis 1. ans. 2. ens. 3. ens. 4. iens. Omnium futuri urus.

M. Verba vero in or unde formantur?

J. Verba in or in tempore præſenti cum prole de verbis in o formantur.

1. Addendo r ad o ubique re-  
pertur.
2. Mutando m in r.
3. Mutando s in ris & re.
4. Mutando t in tur.
5. Mutando mus in mur.
6. Mutando tis in mini.
7. Mutando te in mini.
8. Mutando tote in minor.

9. Mutando e in i infinitivo tertiâ vero conjugatione ere mutatur in i, ut legere legi.

10. Futurum infinitivi fit ex participio perfecti cum iri vel de futuro in dus cum eſſe, ut, amatum iri vel amandum eſſe.

11. Secundâ perſonâ præſentis & tertiæ conjugationis.

Secundâ etiam perſonâ futuri indicativo primæ & ſecundæ conjugationis i mutatur in e ut, is fit,

jugation i is changed into e, as,  
 is becomes eris or ere,  
 abis is changed into aberis, or  
 abere ebis is turned into eberis  
 or ebere.

M. But what tenses are those  
 which are formed from the pre-  
 sent tense?

J. Five tenses are formed from  
 the perfect tense, which this  
 short verse retains for memory  
 sake, viz. perfect, pluperfect,  
 perfect, pluperfect, future, per-  
 fect and pluperfect.

But from the present tense of  
 the indicative mood is formed  
 the preterimperfect and future  
 tense of the same, and the pre-  
 sent and imperfect of all other  
 moods.

M. Conjugate laudo in the se-  
 cond person thro' every mood and  
 tense?

J. Thou--doft--didst--haft--hadst  
 shalt--do thou--maist--should--  
 might have-- could have had--  
 can hereafter-- to-- to have--  
 to hereafter-- praise, of praising,  
 in praising, to praise, to praise,  
 to be praised.

M. Conjugate laudo in the  
 persons through every mood and  
 tense?

J. I praise, thou doft praise,  
 he doth praise, we do commend,  
 ye commend, they commend,  
 I did commend, thou didst com-  
 mend, &c.

M. Laudor in the perfect  
 tense?

J. I have been praised, because  
 verbs in or have their perfect  
 tense with those that descend of  
 it, from the latter supine by add-  
 ing s and the verb sum or fui,  
 as, &c. I have been commended,  
 taught, read, heard, &c.

is, fit, eris vel ere.

abis fit aberis vel abere.  
 ebis fit eberis vel ebere.

M. Quæ autem sunt tempora  
 ex præsentī formata?

J. Ex præterito perfectō quin-  
 que tempora formantur, memo-  
 riâ ergo hic versiculus retinet,

i--ram--rim--sem--ro--sse.

ast formabit cætera præsens,  
 ut, ex laudavi fit laudaveram,  
 laudaverim, laudavisse, lauda-  
 vero, laudavisse, quod plenius vi-  
 deatur Praxi antecedente.

M. Conjugate laudo in secundâ  
 personâ per omnes modos & tem-  
 pora?

J. Laud---as---abas--- avisti---  
 averas-- abis-- a--ato-- es-- ares--  
 averis--avisses--averis--are--avisse  
 aturum esse--andi--ando--andum  
 atum--atu--ans--aturus

M. Conjugate laudo in personis  
 per omnes modos & tempora?

J. Laud o as at amus atis  
 ant abam abas abat abamus  
 abatis abant avi avisti avit avi-  
 mus avistis averunt vel avère  
 &c.

M. Laudor in perfectō?

J. Laudatus sum vel fui  
 quia verba in or habent perfe-  
 ctum cum prole, ex posteriori  
 supino addendo s & sum vel fui  
 ut, laudatus, doctus, lectus, audi-  
 tus sum, eram, sim, essem, ero  
 esse



Of the Verb Sum, and the perfect Tense of Verbs in or.

M. Sum then in the perfect tense.

J. Fui I have been, and wants the Supines.

M. Conjugate Sum in the Persons through every Mood and Tense?

J. The Indicative Mood and Present Tense.

I am, thou art, he is, we are, ye are, they are.

Preterimperfect Tense.

I was, thou wast, he was, we were, ye were, they were.

Preterperfect Tense.

I have been, thou hast been, &c.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

I had been, thou hadst been, &c.

Future Tense.

I shall or will be, thou shalt, &c.

The Conjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

I may be, thou mayst be, &c.

Preterimperfect Tense.

I might be, thou should be, &c.

Preterperfect Tense.

I might have been, thou, &c.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

I might have had been, thou, &c.

Future Tense.

I may be hereafter, thou canst, &c.

The Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.

Be thou, let him be, let us be, be ye, let them be.

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Preterimperfect Tenses.

Esse, to be.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses.

Fuisse, to have been.

De Verbo Sum, & perfecto Passivæ.

M. Sum igitur in perfecto?

J. Fui, & caret Supinis.

M. Conjugæ Sum in personis per omnes modos & tempora?

J. Modus Indicativus.

Tempus Præsens.

Ego tu ille Nos vos illi:  
Sum, es, est. Sumus, estis, sunt:

Tempus Imperfectum.

era m s t. mus tis nt.

Tempus Perfectum.

Fu i isti it. imus istis } erunt  
Plusquamperfectum. } ère.

Fuera m s t. mus tis nt.

Tempus Futurum.

er o is it. imus itis unt.

Modus Conjunctivus.

Tempus Præsens.

Sim sis sit. simus sitis sint:

Tempus Imperfectum.

Esse m s t. mus tis nt.

Tempus Perfectum.

Fueri m s t. mus tis nt.

Plusquamperfectum.

Fuisse m s t mus tis nt:

Tempus Futurum.

Fuer o is it imus itis int.

Modus Imperativus, Præsens.

fis	fit	} simus	} sitis sint.
es	esto		
esto			estote.

Modus Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperfectum.

Esse.

Perfectum & Plusquamperfectum.

Fuisse.

L Future

*Future Tense.*

To be hereafter.

M. Now Conjugate Laudor in the third person singular thro' every Mood and Tense?

J. He is praised, he was commended, he hath been, he had been, he will or shall be. Let him be, he may be, he should be, he might have been, he would have had been, he may be hereafter; to be; to have or had been; hereafter to be; having, to be praised.

*Of the Persons and Numbers of Verbs.*

M. How many Persons in Verbs?

J. Persons are three; the first, second and third; and Numbers are two, the singular and plural

M. How is Person and Number of Verbs known?

J. The Nominative case either expressed or understood comes before a finite verb personal, which directs the verb to be made the same Number and Person, as, I praise, and am praised.

Thou didst warn, and wast warned.

Peter heareth, and is heard.

We have taught, and have been taught.

Ye will command, and shall be bidden.

We cannot mend things past.

Where *nos* we, is understood.

M. Why do you say, doth the King come (not)?

J. Because the Nominative case is put after verbs of asking and commanding, or their signs, which nevertheless guides the verbs in the same number and person, as,

*Futurum.*

Fore, vel Futurum esse.

M. Jam conjuga laudor in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes Modos & Tempora?

J. Laud-atur, abatur, atus est vel fuit, atus erat vel fuerat; abitur, etur, ator, êtur, aretur, atus sit vel fuerit, atus esset vel fuisset, atus erit vel fuerit, ari, atum iri vel andum esse, atus andus.

*De Personis & Verborum Numeris.*

M. Quot sunt Personæ?

J. Personæ sunt tres, prima, secunda, tertia, & numeri sunt duo Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Unde dignoscuntur Persona & Numerus verborum?

J. Nominativus expressus vel intellectus præcedit verbum personale finitum simili Numero & Personâ, ut Ego laudo, & laudor.

Tu monebas & monebaris.

Petrus audit & auditur.

Nos docuimus & docti sumus.

Vos jubetis & jubemini.

Præterita mutare non possumus, hoc est, nos non possumus.

M. Quare dicis venitne Rex (non) Rex venitne?

J. Quia Nominativus post-ponitur verbis Interrogandi & Imperandi simili humero & personâ, ut,

Do

Do thou read, and let us be heard.

Let us hear one another.

M. What part of speech is laudo ?

J. It is a verb active of the first conjugation.

M. Why so ?

J. It is a Verb because it is a word declined by Moods and Tenses.

It is an active, because it signifies to do, and ending in o ; also it can make a passive, by adding r, &c.

It is of the first Conjugation, because it ends in o with a consonant before it,

Legito tu, & audiamur nos.

Audiamus nos vicissim.

M. Laudo, quæ pars orationis ?

J. Est verbum activum primæ conjugationis.

M. Quare ?

J. Verbum est quia vox est variabilis per modos & tempora.

Activum est quia agere significat, & in o finitum ; passivum in or etiam formare potest, ut, laudor.

Est primæ conjugationis quia exit in o præcedente consona, &c.

*Of the First Conjugation.*

M. Decline laudo ?

J. Laudo, &c. are the three Radical Tenses.

M. Why doth it make avi in the perfect tense, and atum in the supine ?

J. Verbs of the first Conjugation do form the perfect tense in avi, and the supine in atum.

M. Juvo then in the perfect tense ?

J. It makes juvi and jutum in the supine, because twenty two verbs of the first conjugation do form the perfect tense and supine irregularly, namely.

*De Prima Conjugatione.*

M. Laudo inflecte ?

Laudo, laudavi, laudatum.

M. Quare dat laudavi in perfecto & laudatum in supino ?

J. Verba primæ Conjugationis formant perfectum in avi, & supinum in atum.

M. Juvo igitur in perfecto ?

J. Juvo dat juvi & jutum in supino quia viginti duo verba primæ conjugationis perfectum & supinum irregulariter formant, viz.



## Vi.

	To	spondeo, spondendi, sponsum	betroth
	help	tondeo, totondi, tonsum	clip
Juvo, juvi, jutum		ui perfecto.	
Lavo, lavi, lavatum & lotum	wash	Censeo, censui, censum	think
ui.		doceo, docui, doctum	teach
Creπο, crepui, crepitum	crack	lateo, latui, latitum	ly hid
cubo, cubui, cubitum	ly down	misceo, miscui	{ miftum } mingle
domo, domui, domitum	tame		
frico, fricui, frictum	rub	forbeo, forbui, forptum	sip
mico, micui, caret supinis	shine	teneo, tenui, tentum	hold
neco, necui, nectum	kill	torreo, torrui, tostum	roft
feco, secui, sectum	cut	evi perfecto.	
sono, sonui, sonitum	sound	aboleo, abolevi, abolitum	abolish
tono, tonui, tonitum	thunder	adoleo, adolevi, adultum	grow
veto, vetui, vetitum	forbid	exoleo, exolevi, exoletum	decay
ui & avi.		inoleo, inolevi, inoletū.	grow bigger
applico	apply	obsoleo, obsolevi, obsoletum	out
complico	to fold		(of use)
explico	unfold	peroleo, perolevi, perolitum	smell
implico	intangle		(rank)
con o avi & atus sum atum	sup	cioo, cievi, citum	stir up
jur o avi & atus sum atum	swear	deleo, deleui, deletum	blot out
pot o avi & atus sum um	drink	fleo, fleui, fletum	weep
titub o avi & atus sum atum	stumble	neo, neui, netum	spin
i Perfecto.		pleo, pleui, pletum	fill
Do, dedi, datum	give	vieo, vieui, vietum	bind
fto, fteti, statum	stand	si perfecto.	
asto, astiti, astitum	stand by	algeo, alfi, caret supinis	be cold
		ardeo, arsi, arsum	burn
		fulgeo, fulsi, caret supinis	glister
		hæreo, hæsi, hæsum	stick to
		indulgeo, indulsi, indultum	cocker
		jubeo, jussi, jssum, command or bid	
		maneo, mansi, mansum	tarry
		mulceo, mulsi, mulsum	asswage
		rideo, risi, risum	laugh
		suadeo, suasi, suasum	perswade
		tergeo, tersi, tersum	wipe
		torqueo, torsi, torsum	wrest
		turgeo, turfi, tursum	swell
		urgeo, urfi, ursum	enforce
		vi perfecto.	
		Caveo, cavi, cautum	beware
		faveo, favi, fautum	favour
		foveo, fovi, fotum	cherish
		moveo, movi, motum	move
			paveo

## Of the Second Conjugation.

M. Moneo in perfecto?

J. Monui & monitum in supino, quia verba secundæ conjugationis formant perfectum in ui, & supinum in itum.

Præter hæc verba sequentia perfectum aliter formant

di perfecto.

Freudeo, frendi, freffum  
 sedeo, sedi, sessum  
 frideo, fridi, caret supinis  
 video, vidi, visum  
 mordeo, momordi, morsum  
 pendeo, pependi, pensum

To

gnash

sit

gnash

see

bite

bang

pav

Aug

frig

luce

luge

C

men

plac

pran

A

gau

sole

fate

med

mif

M

&amp;

nis

J

tibi

C

enu

B

lan

scab

F

jaci

ico,

vino

A

acce

cud

defe

edo.

find

fodi

paveo, pavi, caret sup. <i>xi perfecto.</i>	fear	reor, ratus sum	suppose, judge <i>Impersonalia.</i>
Augeo, auxi, auctum	increase	Lib-et--itum est & uit	it listeth
frigeo, frixi, caret Supin.	be cold	lic-et--itū est & uit	it is permitted
luceo, luxi, caret Supin.	shine	miseret, ?	miseretum est, it pitieth
lugeo, luxi, luctum	lament	miserescit }	
<i>i &amp; us sum.</i>		piget, pigitū est, piguit	it repenteth
Careo, carui & cassus sum	want	placet, placitum est	it is agreed
mereor, merui & meri-		pertæ-det-sum est & }	
tus sum }	deserve	duit }	it wearieth
placeo, placui & placitus sum	please	pudet, puditum est & }	
prandeo, prandi & pran-		puduit }	it shametb
sus sum }	dine		
<i>us sum.</i>		Cætera impersonalia regulari-	
Audeo, ausus sum	be bold	ter formantur, ut oport---et---ebat	
gaudeo, gavisus sum	rejoice	uit--uerat--ebit---eat---eto--eat--eret	
soleo, solitus sum	be wont	uerit--uisset--uerit--ere--uisse.	
fateor, fassus sum	confess, affirm	M. Arceo in supino ?	
medeor, medicatus sum	heal	J. Arceo, timeo & omnia fere	
misereor, misertus sum	pity	neutra secundæ conjugationis ha-	
		bentia ui in perfecto carent supinis	

Of the Third Conjugation.

M. Quomodo mittit perfectum & Supinum tertię Conjugatio-		frendo, frendi, freffum	gnash
nis ?		fundo, fudi, fustum	pour out
J. Finibus ex variis flexum tibi tertia monstrat.		mando, mandi, mansum	eat
Omnia ergo verba hujus jam enumerantur.		occido, occidi, occasum	die
<i>bi perfecto.</i>		occido, occidi, occisum	kill
Bibo, bibi, bibitum	To drink	pando, pandi }	pansum }
lampo, lambi, caret sup.	lick	passum }	set open
scabo, scabi, caret sup.	scratch	prehen--do--di--sum	catch
<i>ci perfecto.</i>		rudo, rudi, caret sup.	bray
Facio, feci, factum	make	scando, scandi, scansum	climb
jacio, jeci, jactum	cast	scindo, scidi, scissum	cut
ico, ici, ictum	smite	fido, fidi, caret sup.	sink down
vinco, vici, victum	overcome	strido, stridi, caret sup.	gnash
<i>di perfecto.</i>		<i>gi perfecto.</i>	
Abscon--do--i--itum	hide	ago, egi, actum	do
accend--o--i--sum	kindle	cogo, coegi, coactum	compel
cudo, cudi, cusum	forge	dego, degi caret sup.	live
defend--o--i--sum	defend	per--ago--egi--actum	perform
edo, edi, esum	eat	fat--ago--egi--actum	be busy
findo, fidi, fissum	cleave	frango, fregi, fractum	break
fodio, fodi, fossum	dig	fugio, fugi, fugitum	fly
		lego, legi, lectum	read
		<i>li perfecto.</i>	
		Ferō tuli, latum	to bear suffer
		L 3	perc.

perc-ello--uli--ulsum	To strike	percutio, percussi, percussum	To smite
psallo, psalli, caret sup.	sing	premo, preffi, pressum	press
rec-ello--uli--ulsum	pull back	quatio, quassi, quassum	shake
refello, refelli, caret sup.	refute	uro, ussi, ustum	burn
tollo, sustuli, sublatum	take away	<i>ui perfecto.</i>	
<i>i perfecto.</i>			
Emo, emi, emptum	buy	Acuo, acui, acutum	sharpen
capio, cepi, captum	take	accino, accinui, accentum	sing to
rumpo, rupi, rumpum	break	alo, alui, alitum & altum	nourish
linquo, liqui, lictum	leave	annuo, annui, caret sup.	yield unto
succur--o--ri--sum	help	arguo, argui, argutum	reprove
verro, verri, versum	brush	colo, colui, cultum	cultivate or till
sisto, stiti, statum	make stand	compesc--o---ui caret sup.	refrain
verto, verti, versum	turn	congruo, congrui, caret sup.	agree to
<i>psi perfecto.</i>			
Carpo, carpsi, carptum	crop	consul--o--ui--tum	counsel
como, compsi, comptum	kemp	desipio, desipui, caret sup.	do as
demo, dempsi, demptum	take away	diluo, dilui, dilutum	cleanse
glubo, glupsi, gluptum	steal	dispesco, dispescui, ca. sup.	drive from
nubo, nupsi, nuptum	be married	excello, excellui, excelsum	excel
promo, prompsi, promptum	draw	fremo, fremui, fremitum	roar
repo, repsi, reptum	crawl	gemo, gemui, gemitum	groan
scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum	scratch	gigno, genui, genitum	beget
scribo, scripsi, scriptum	write	imbuo, imbui, imbutum	season
sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum	engrave	ingruo, ingrui, caret sup.	invade
serpo, serpsi, serptum	creep	luo, lui, luitum	pay or satisfy
fumo, fumpsi, sumptum	take	malo, malui, caret sup.	have rather
tempo, templi, temptum	despise	meto, messui, messum	mow
<i>si perfecto.</i>			
Claudo, clausi, clausum	shut	metuo, metui, caret sup.	fear
divido, divisi, divisum	divide	minu---o---i---tum	diminish
lædo, læsi, læsum	hurt	molo, molui, molitum	grind
ludo, ludi, lusum	play	nolo, nolui, caret sup.	be unwilling
mergo, merfi, mersum	drown	occulo, occului, occultum	hide
mitto, misi, missum	send	pinso, pinsui, pistum	bake
plaudo, plaufi, plaufum	applaud	plecto, plexui, plexum	punish
rado, rasi, rasum	shave	pono, posui, positum	put
rodo, rosi, rosum	gnaw	præcel--lo--lui--sum	surpass
spargo, sparsi, sparsum	sprinkle	rapio, rapui, raptum	snatch
trudo, trusi, trusum	thrust	renuo, renui, caret sup.	slight
vado, vasi, vasum	go	ruo, rui, ruitum & rutum	rush
vifo, visi, visum	visit	sero, serui, sertum	lay in order
<i>si perfecto.</i>			
Cædo, cessi, cessum	give place	spuo, spui, sputum	spit
gero, gessi, gestum	carry	statuo, statui, statutum	appoint
		sternuo, sternui, sternutum	sneeze
		sterto, stertui, carer sup.	snort
		strepo, strepui, } make a noise	
		streptum, }	
			suo



suo, sui, satum	To sew	intell-igo--exi--ectum	To understand
texo, texui, textum	weave	negligo, neglexi, neglectum	neglect
tremo, tremui, tremittum	tremble	pergo, perrexī, } perrectum }	go forward
tribuo, tribui, tributum	give	quiesco, quexi, caret sup.	nod
volo, volui, caret sup.	be willing	furgo, surrexi, surrectum	arise
vomo, vomui, vomitum	vomit	Cætera etiam composita à rego	
xi in perfecto.		& specio dant exi perfecto.	
Ango, anxi, caret sup.	perplex	didi in perfecto.	
cingo, cingi, cinctum	gird	abdo, abdidi, abditum	bide
clango, clanxi, caret sup.	sound	addo, addidi, additum	add
coquo, coxi, coctum	boil	condo, condidi, conditum	build
dico, dixi, dictum	say or speak	credo, credidi, creditum	believe
duco, duxi, ductum	lead	dedo, dedidi, derlitum	yield up
figo, fixi, fixum	fasten	edo, edidi, editum	publish
fingo, finxi, fictum	feign	indo, indidi, inditum	put in
flecto, flexi, flexum	bend	obdo, obdidi, obditum	put against
fligo, flixi, flictum	beat	prodo, prodidi, proditum	betray
fluo, fluxi, fluctum	flow	reddo, reddidi, redditum	restore
frigo, frixi, frixum & frictum	parch	trado, tradidi, traditum	deliver
jungo, junxi, junctum	joyn	vendo, vendidi, venditum	sell
lingo, linxi, linctum	lick	vi perfecto.	
meio } minxi, mictum	piss	Calvo, calvi, caret sup.	be bald
mingo }		cerno, crevi, caret sup.	see
mungo, munxi, munctum	snite	creasco, crevi, cretum	grow
ningo, ninxi, caret sup.	snow	lavo, lavi, lavatum	wash
pingo, pinxi, pictum	paint	nosco, novi, notum	know
plango, planxi, planctum	lament	ignosco, ignovi, ignotum	forgive
rego, rexi, rectum	rule, govern	palco, pavi, pastum	feed
ringo, rinxi, rictum	grin	quæro, quæsi, quæsitum	feel
stingo } stinxi, stinctum	extinguish	quiesco, quievi, quietum	rest
stringuo }		scisco, scivi, scitum	determine
stringo, strinxi, strictum	bind	sero, sevi, satum	plant, sow
struo, struxi, structum	build	sino, sivi, situm	suffer
sugo, suxi, caret sup.	suck	solvo, solvi, solutum	loose
tego, texi, tectum	cover	sperno, spreui, spretum	despise
tingo, tinxi, tinctum	colour, dye	sterno, stravi, stratum	strow
traho, traxi, tractum	draw	suesco, suevi, suetum	accustom
veho, vexi, vectum	carry	tero, trivi, tritum	wear
vivo, vixi, victum	live	volvo, volvi, volutum	roll
ungo, unxi, unctum	anoint	ivi perfecto.	
exi in perfecto.		arcess--o--ivi--um	fetch, summon
Allicio, allexi, allectum	allure	cupio, cupivi, cupitum	desire
diligo, dilexi, dilectum	love	lacest--o--ivi--itum	provoke
dirigo, direxi, directum	direct	peto, petivi, petitum	ask
inspicio, inspexi, inspectum	look into		fido

fido dat físus sum caret sup.	<i>trust</i>	pu-ngo-nxi & pugi-ñctum	<i>prick</i>
M. Cado in perfecto ?		sapio, sapui & sapi-vi car.	<i>be wise</i>
J. Cecidi (non) cedi quia sep-		vello, velli & vülfi vulsum	<i>pluck</i>
tendecim verba tertiæ conjugati-		verro, verri & versi versum	<i>brush</i>
onis geminant perfectum.		M. Recita Deponentia verba	
cado, cecidi, casum	<i>to fall</i>	irregularia tertiæ conjugationis ?	
cædo, cecidi, cæsum	<i>beat</i>	J. Æditu--or--tus sum, to over-	<i>see a Church.</i>
cano, cecini, cantum	<i>sing</i>	adipiscor adeptus sum	<i>obtain, get</i>
curro, cucurri, cursum	<i>run</i>	amplector, amplexus sum	<i>embrace</i>
decu--rro--curri--rsum	<i>run out</i>	avertor averfus sum	<i>abhor</i>
præcu--rro--curri--rsum	<i>run before</i>	calvor, frustratus sum	<i>disappoint</i>
disco, didisci, caret sup.	<i>learn</i>	comm--iniscor--entus sum	<i>invent</i>
fallo, fefelli, falsum	<i>deceive</i>	complector, complexus sum	<i>contain</i>
pario, peperer, partum	<i>bring forth</i>	exper--giscor--ectus sum	<i>awake</i>
pedo, pepedi, peditum	<i>fart</i>	fruor, fructus & fruitus sum	<i>enjoy</i>
pello, pepuli, pulsum	<i>drive out</i>	fungor, functus sum	<i>exercise duty</i>
pendo, pependi, pensum	<i>weigh</i>	gradior, gressus sum	<i>go by steps</i>
posco, poposci, caret sup.	<i>require</i>	irascor, iratus sum	<i>be angry</i>
tango, tetigi, tactum	<i>touch</i>	labascor, lapsus sum	<i>faint, fail</i>
te--ndo--tendi--nsum & ntum	<i>stretch</i>	labor, lapsus sum	<i>slide or fall</i>
tundo, tutudi, tunsum	<i>knock</i>	liqu--or--ifactus sum	<i>dissolve, drop</i>
In verbis vero compositis per-		loquor, locutus sum	<i>speak</i>
fectum non geminatur nisi in his		mорий, mortuus sum	<i>die</i>
tantum sequentibus do fere didi		naciscor, nactus sum	<i>get, obtain</i>
sto stiti oleo olevi disco didisci,		nascor, natus sum	<i>be born, spring</i>
& posco poposci.		nitor, nifus & nixus sum	<i>endeavour</i>
M. Capeffo in perfecto ?		paciscor, pactus sum	<i>bargain</i>
J. Duodecim tertiæ conjugati-		pascor, pastus sum	<i>feed</i>
onis perfecto redundant		patior, passus sum	<i>suffer</i>
capeffo, capeffi, capeffivi, }	<i>to take</i>	proficiscor, profectus su	<i>go forward</i>
capeffitum }		quæror, quæstus sum	<i>complain</i>
faceff--o--i & ivi--itum	<i>dismiss</i>	redipiscor, redeptus sum	<i>recover</i>
inceff--o--i & ivi--itum	<i>provoke</i>	reminiscor, recordatus }	<i>remember</i>
lino, lini, livi & levi litum	<i>besmear</i>	sum }	
necto, nexi & nexui nexum	<i>knit</i>	revertor, reversus & reverti	<i>return</i>
pecto }		ringor, caret præterito	<i>grin, fret</i>
{ pexi }	<i>kemb</i>	sequor, secutus sum	<i>follow</i>
{ pexui }		tuor, tuitus sum	<i>behold</i>
pango, panxi & pepegi }	<i>bargain</i>	vescor, pastus sum	<i>feed on, eat</i>
pactum }		ulciscor, ultus sum	<i>be revenged</i>
parco, parci, & peperci car. su.	<i>spare</i>	utor, usus sum	<i>use, occupy</i>
pluo, plui & pluvi, plutum	<i>rain</i>		

## Of the Fourth Conjugation.

M. Audio in perfecto ?

J. Audivi &amp; auditum in supino ; format io quartis ivi descendit in itum.

Duo viginti vero excipienda quæ sunt anomala.

To  
comperio, caret, compertum *find*  
reperio, caret, repertum *find by chance*  
farcio, farci, fartum *stuff, cram*  
venio, veni, ventum *come*  
*si perfecto.*

*si perfecto.*  
refercio, referfi, refertum *stuff again*  
fulcio, fulsi, fultum *prop*  
ferio, percussi, caret sup. *strike*  
haurio, hausi, haustum *draw*  
raucio, rausi, rausum *be hoarse*  
farcio, farli, fartum *patch*  
sentio, sensi, sensum *perceive*  
sepio, sepsi, septum *hedge*  
*ui perfecto.*

Aperio, aperui, apertum *open*  
operio, operui, opertum *cover*  
amicio, amicui, amictum *put on cloaths*  
salio, salui & salii, saltum *leap*

To  
fio dat factus sum *be made or done*  
*vi perfecto.*

Furo, insanivi, caret *be enraged*  
vенеo, venivi, venum *be sold*  
eo, ivi, itum *go*

queo, quivi, quitum *may or can*  
fancio { fancivi } fancitum { *establish*  
          { fanxi } sanctum {  
Singult--io--ivi--tum *sob*  
sepeli--o--vi--sepultum *bury*

*Deponentia verba.*

assentior, assensus sum *consent*  
experior, expertus sum *try*  
operior, opertus sum *look, stay for*  
ordior, orsus sum *begin*  
orior, ortus sum *arise*  
metior, mensus sum *measure*  
Mentior, mentitus sum *feign*  
molior, molitus sum *contrive*  
largior, largitus sum *give liberally*  
crinior, crinitus sum *be hairy*  
partior, partitus sum *divide*  
sortior, sortitus sum *cast, draw lots*  
potior, potitus sum *obtain, enjoy*

## Observations upon certain Verbs.

M. Cerno in the perfect tense ?

J. Crevi, but there are eleven preterperfect tenses which are only found in composition, namely,

I have beaten, filled from, &c.  
I have seen, shaken from, &c.  
I have lain down, anointed from, &c.

I have snewed, allured from, &amp;c.

I have sapt, seen from, &amp;c.

## Notæ de quibusdam Verbis.

M. Cerno in perfecto ?

J. Crevi, sed undecim sunt perfectæ quæ compositione tantum reperta, viz.

Cellui, plevi, ex cello, pleo  
Crevi, quassi ex cerno, quatio  
Cubui levi, ex cumbo, leo

Nivi lexi, ex niveo lacio

Sorpfi spexi, ex sorbeo specio

M. Van



I have gone from vado, as, I have assaulted.

M. Ambigo in the perfect tense?

J. Ambigo *to doubt*, wants both the preterperfect tense and supines; so also does, &c. *to lift up, to desire, to flatter, to be reputed, to grow thick, to gaze, to be yellow, to rage, to become smooth, to glow, to be dull, to yawn, to totter, to be black and blew, to mourn, to knit, to be able, to rage, to glister, to water, to bend.*

Passives also want the perfect tense, whose actives want the supines.

Also Inceptives in *sco*, and meditative, except, &c. *to bring forth*, and *to be hungry*, which two verbs make *parturitum* & *esuritum* in the supine.

M. Why doth *gestio* want the supines?

J. These verbs also want the supines, *to leap away, to leap forwards, to invade, to desire, to squander away.*

### Of Species and Figure of Verbs.

M. How manifold is the species of a verb?

J. It is two-fold, primitive, as, *lego I read*, and derivative, as, *lecturio, to desire to read.*

Figure also is twofold simple, as *pono I put*, and compound as, *compono I compose or make.*

Give me all its Compounds according to the Alphabet?

J. To set on, to compare, to lay down, to put in or upon, to put between or among, to set against, to set before, to set out, to

Vasi ex vado, ut, invasi.

M. Ambigo in perfecto?

J. Ambigo caret præterito & supinis; sic etiam attollo, aveo, ceveo, clueo, denseo, fatisco, flavo, furo, glabreo, glisco, hebeo, hisco, labeo, liveo, mæreo, nexo, polleo, rabio, renideo, rigor, vergo.

Etiam Passiva quorum activa carent supinis.

Item Inceptiva in *sco*, & meditative præter, parturio & esurio quæ duo dant parturitum & esuritum supino.

M. Gestio caret supinis quare?

J. Verba sequentia etiam carent supinis, absilio, profilio, incesso, gestio, prodigo.

### De Speciebus & Verborum Figuris.

M. Quotuplex est species verborum?

J. Duplex, primitiva, ut *lego*; & derivativa, ut *lecturio*.

Figura etiam est simplex, ut, *pono*; & composita, ut *compono*.

M. Dic mihi omnia composita secundum Alphabetum?

J. Appono, compono, depono, expono, impono, interpono, oppono, præpono, propono, postpono,

set after, to put on again, to put aside, to put over, to put under, to remove.

M. What kind of verb is *fero* to bear?

J. It is a simple verb.

M. Rehearse the compounds alphabetically.

J. To bring, to carry away, to prefer, to discourse, to carry from, to delay, to bring out, to bring in, to present, to bring again, to bear with, to interpret or translate.

M. Why are Verbs compounded?

J. Because they unloose the simple?

M. Whence is *affero* compounded?

J. Of *ad* and *fero* to bear unto.

M. Why *affero* (not) *adfero*?

J. For smooth pronunciation sake.

Also the Præposition *abs* coming before *f* is changed into *au*.

*In*, *con*, before *b p* change *n* into *im*, But before *l m r* they change *n* into the following consonant.

But *n* in *con* is lost before a vowel, as, &c. to buy up in great quantities.

*ad* before *c f g l n p r s t*.

*ob* also before *c f g p*.

*sub* also before *c f g m p*.

*per* and *inter* before *l*, and for the most part *x* before *f* change the last Letter into the following Consonant.

*ad ob trans dis* for the most part, loose the last letter in composition, as, &c. to open, to let pass, to pass over, to pull off.

M. Why do you say *infringo* (not) *infrango*.

*pono*, *repono*, *sepono*, *superpono*, *suppono*, *transpono*.

M. *Fero* quale Verbum?

J. Est verbum simplex.

M. Recita composita alphabeticè?

J. *Affero*, *aufero*, *antefero*, *confero*, *defero*, *differo*, *effero*, *infero*, *offero*, *refero*, *suffero*, *transfero*.

M. Quare sunt verba composita?

J. Quia simplicia exolverunt.

M. *Affero* unde componitur?

J. Ex *ad* & *fero*.

M. *Af* pro *ad* quare?

J. Euphoniæ gratiâ.

*Abs* etiam ante *f* mutatur in *au*.

*In*, *con*, ante *b p* mutant *n* in *im*, sed ante *l m r* mutant *n* in consonam sequentem.

*n* vero in *con* amissum ante vocalem ut, *coemo* (non) *conemo*.

*ad* ante *c f g l n p r s t*.

*ob* etiam ante *c f g p*.

*sub* item ante *c f g m p*.

*per* & *inter* ante *l* fere *x* ante *f* mutant ultimam in consonam sequentem, ut *effero* (non) *exfero*.

*ad*, *ob*, *trans*, *dis*, fere amittunt ultimam, ut *aperio*, *omitto*, *trajicio*, *divello*.

M. Quare dicis *infringo* (non) *infrango*?

M 2

J. These

J. These Verbs following in composition change their first Vowel into *i* in the present tense, and those derived from it, as, to confess, to take, to break, to cast, to allure and deceive, to press, to behold.

To do, *except* to compel, to live, to finish, to be busie, and to turn round.

To rule, *except* to go on, to arise.

To sit, *except* to sit upon.

To buy, *except* to buy a great quantity.

To bargain, *except* to fasten into the ground, to fasten against, to plant again, to ram or fasten about.

Also to do, if *facio* be compounded with a Noun, or with, *Ec. well, ill, enough.*

M. Why applodo to stamp (not) applaudo?

J. Because plaudo to clap hands for joy, in composition makes plodo; and in the following verbs *a* is changed into *u*.

To kick or tread upon, to plead, to shut, to wash, to shake, to leap, to dance, and to scratch.

To gather, to choose, to elect, to cull, do make *legi* in the perfect tense.

To love, to understand, to neglect, do make *lexi*; but the rest of the compounds of *lego* change no Vowel.

M. Why condemno to condemn (not) *condamno*.

J. The following Verbs in composition change their first Vowel into *e* in every tense, namely,

To drive away, to shine, to catch at, to pick, to condemn, to deceive, to be weary.

To stuff, to go step by step,

J. Hæc sequentia compositione primam mutant vocalem in *i* tempore præsentis cum prole.

Fateor, capio, frango, jacio, lacio, premo, specio.

Ago, *excipe* cogo, dego, perago, fatago & circumago.

Rego, *excipe* pergo & surgo.

Sedeo, *excipe* supersedeo.

Emo, *excipe* coemo.

Pango, *excipe* depango, oppango, repango, circumpango.

*Facio* etiam si componitur nomine, aut, *bcne, male, satis.*

M. Quare applodo (non) applaudo?

J. Quia plaudo compositione dat plodo, & in sequentibus *a* mutatur in *u*.

Calco, causor, claudio, lavo, quatio, saltoq; scalpo.

Colligo, deligo, eligo, seligo, faciunt *legi* in perfecto.

Diligo, intelligo, negligo, dant *lexi*; cætera vero composita a *lego* nullam mutant vocalem.

M. Quare condemno (non) *condamno*?

J. Omnibus Temporibus sequentia in compositione primam vocalem mutant in *e*, viz.

Arceo, cando, capto, carpo, damno, fallo, fatiscor.

Farcio, gradior,

to tol  
vote.

To  
suckle

Al  
to re

two  
fect

Fr  
two,

to sw  
Fr

to k  
find

make  
Fr

to co  
Fr

to pa  
Fr

to be  
T

retai  
Verb

M  
(not

J.  
posit

chan  
nam

T  
want

to le  
T

filen  
excep

A  
to ab

behi  
Fr

displ  
M

pine  
to kn

J.  
tion,

ner.



to toss, to share, to effect, to devote, and to climb.

To sprinkle, to handle, to suckle, *except* *ablaeto* to wean.

Also from *pasco* to feed, &c. to refrain and to separate, which two Verbs make *ui* in the perfect tense.

From *juro* to swear, only these two, &c. to swear solemnly and to swear falsely.

From *pario* to bring forth, &c. to know by experience, and to find by chance, do change, and make *peri* in the perfect tense.

From *mando* to chew, only, &c. to commend.

From *halo* to breath, only, &c. to pant.

From *patior* to endure only, &c. to bear constantly.

The rest of their Compounds retain the Letters of the simple Verbs.

M. Why *prohibeo* to forbid (not) *prohabeo*.

J. These simple Verbs in composition, and in every tense, change their first Vowel into *i*, namely,

To fall, to beat, to sing, to want, to hurt, to seek, to dance, to leap, to be wise.

To appoint, to snatch, to be silent, to touch, to keep, to have, *except*, &c. to value lower.

Also *maneo* to tarry, *except*, &c. to abide constantly, and to remain behind.

From *placeo* to please, *displicio* displease.

M. Why *contusum* in the supine (not) *contunsum* from *tundo* to knock.

J. These Supines in Composition, are changed on this manner.

*cio*, *patro*, *sacroque scando*.

*Spargo*, *tracto*, *laeto*, *excipe* *ablaeto*.

à *pasco* etiam *compesco* & *dispesco*, quæ dant *ui* in perfecto.

à *Juro*, *dejero*, *pejero* tantum.

à *Fario*, *comperio* & *reperio*, quæ dant perfecto *peri*.

à *Mando*, *commendo* solum.

*Ex halo*, *anhelo* tantum.

à *patior* *perpetior* solum.

*Cætera composita sequuntur formam simplicium.*

M. Quare *prohibeo* (non) *prohabeo*?

J. Omnibus temporibus hæc simplicia mutant primam Vocale in *i* compositione, *viç*.

*Cado*, *cædo*, *cano*, *egeo*, *lædo*, *quæro*, *salio*, *fapio*.

*Statuo*, *rapio*, *taceo*, *tango*, *teneo*, *habeo*, nisi *posthabeo*.

*Et maneo*, *excipe* *permaneo*, *remaneoque*.

à *placeo*, *displicio* tantum.

M. Quare *contusum* in supino (non) *contunsum* ex *tundo*?

J. Hæc supina compositione hoc modo mutantur.

*Tunsum* in Composition is made *tusum*.

*Ruitum* is made *rutum* to rush; *saltum* makes *sultum* to leap; *futum* makes *fitum* to sew; *datum* makes *ditum* to give; *statum* makes *stitum* to stand; *adoleo*, *adultum* to appease; *agnosco*, *agnitum* to acknowledge, and *cognosco*, *cognitum* to be informed;

*Edo* in composition makes the supine *esum* to eat; only *comedo* to eat up, makes both *esum* and *estum*.

The following supines in composition change the first Vowel into *e*.

To sing, to take, to find fault, to make, and to stuff.

To cast, to snatch, to sprinkle, and to bring forth.

### Of certain irregular and defective Verbs.

M. *Fero* in the Imperative Mood?

J. *Fer*, *ferto*, be thou born or suffered,

M. *Eo* I go, in the imperfect tense?

J. *ibam* I went; and in the future tense *ibo* I will go; also in the Participle of the present tense, Nom. *iens*. Gen. *euntis*.

M. *Queo* and *nequeo* in the Imperative?

J. They want the Imperative; in other Moods they are declined like *eo*.

M. *Possum* in the Imperative?

J. *Possum*, *malo*, *volo* want the Imperative.

*I am unwilling*, makes, &c. *don't thou*; Plurally, *don't ye*.

M. Whence is *Possum* conjugated?

*Tunsum* fit *tusum* compositione.

*Ruitum* fit *rutum*; *saltum* fit *sultum*; *futum* fit *fitum*; *datum* fit *ditum*; *statum* fit *stitum*; *adoleo* dat *adultum*; *agnosco* dat *agnitum*; & *cognosco* *cognitum*.

*Edo* compositione dat *esum*; *comedo* vero dat *esum* & *estum*.

Supina sequentia in compositione primam vocalem mutant in *e*.

*Cantum*, *captum*, *carptum*, *factum*que *fartum*.

*Iactum*, *raptum*, *sparsum*que *partum*.

### De quibusdam anomalibus, & verborum defectivis.

M. *Fero* in Imperativo?

J. *Fer*---*ferto*.

M. *Eo* in Imperfecto?

J. *ibam* & *ibo* in futuro; *iens euntis* etiam in participio.

M. *Queo* & *nequeo* in Imperativo?

J. Imperativo desunt. Ceteris modis conjugantur, ut *eo*.

M. *Possum* in Imperativo?

J. *Possum*, *malo*, *volo* carent Imperativo.

*Nolo* dat *noli* *nolito*; Pluraliter *nolite*, *nolitote*.

M. Unde *possim* conjugatur?

J. *Pof*

J. *Possūm* is conjugated like *sum*; provided we observe, that wheresoever *sum* begins with *s*, it takes *pos* before it; where *sum* begins with *e* it takes *pot* before it; except *essem*, *esse*, and where *sum* begins with *f*, that Letter is changed into *pot*.

J. Conjugate *prosum* *I profit*?

J. *Prosum* is conjugated like *sum*; only it takes *d* before it in every Person which begins with a Vowel, as, *pro-des* (not) *pro-es*, *thou dost good*.

M. Conjugate *malo*, *nolo* and *volo*?

J. Indicative Mood Present Tense, I had rather, thou hadst rather, &c.

I am unwilling, thou art unwilling, he is unwilling, &c.

I will, thou wilt, he will, we will; the rest are regular by the third conjugation.

M. In the present tense of the Conjunctive Mood?

J. I may be more willing, unwilling, &c.

Imperfect tense, I should be more willing, unwilling, willing.

In the Infinitive, to be more willing, unwilling, willing, in all other tenses they are regularly formed by the third Conjugation.

M. Conjugate *edo* to eat?

J. Indicative Mood present tense, I eat, thou eatest, he eateth. *Imperfect tense* of the Conjunctive Mood, I might eat, &c. In the Infinitive Mood *to eat*; the rest of the tenses do not abound, but are regularly formed by the third Conjugation.

M. What part of Speech is *aiō*?

J. *Possūm* conjugatur ut *sum*; modo notandum ubique *sum* incipit cum *f* accipit *pos*; ubi incipit cum *e* accipit *pot*; nisi *essem* *esse*, ubi etiam incipit cum *f* mutatur in *pot*.

J. Conjugate *prosum*?

J. *Prosum* conjugatur ut *sum*; nisi accipit *d* in omnibus personis cum vocali incipientibus ut, *pro-des*.

M. Conjugate *malo*, *nolo*, *volo*?

J. *Indic. præsens*, *ma-lo-vis-vult-lumus-vultis-lunt*, &c.

*No---lo---nvis---nvult---lumus, nvultis---lunt*, &c.

*Volo*, *vis*, *vult*, *volumus*, *vultis*, *volunt*, &c. per tertiam regulariter.

M. In præsenti conjunctivi?

J. *Malim*, *nolim*, *velim*.

*Imperfecto*, *mallem*, *nollem*, *vellem*.

*Infinitivo*, *malle*, *nolle*, *velle*, *Cæteris* nusquam non recte per tertiam conjugationem formantur.

M. *Edo* conjugate?

J. *Indicativi Præsens*, *edo*, *edis* vel *es*, *edit* vel *est*, &c. *Imperfecto Conjunctivi*, *ederem* vel *essem*, &c. *Infinitivo*, *edere* vel *esse*. *Cætera* non redundant & per tertiam regulariter formantur.

M. *Aio*, quæ pars orationis?

Est



It is a Verb defective in declining; so are these, &c. I say, avaunt, give, rest you merry, God save you, farewell, effect, I durst, I should be, quoth I, he rejoiced, to remember, to hate, to begin to know, to pray, &c.

M. Conjugate these defective Verbs?

J. *Indicative Mood present tense* wants the first and second person plural; *imperfect* is intire; *Imperative* only ai; *Conjunct. present* wants the first person; only the second person in the *Imperative*; wants all but the second person *Imperative*; hath only the second person *imperative*; and the present tense *infinitive* wants the first and second person plural, &c. so doth *forem*, which hath *infinitive*, wants the second person plural, *present tense*, *preterimperfect tense indicative Mood* is perfect. *Perfect Tense* has only the second and third person singular.

The *future* wants the first person singular. *Imperative* wants the third singular, and first plural. *Conjunctive Mood present Tense* is perfect; all others are wanting, except the *Participle* of the *present tense*.

Ovat *be rejoiceth*, ovans *rejoicing*; memini, &c. are perfect tenses, and are regular in those that come from it; memini only has an *Imperative Mood*.

Quæso wants all but the first persons.

There is---will be---may be---to be---wanting.

These four Words are only read in composition, as addor *I am grown*, condor *I am framed*.

Infit *he begins* is only used.

Est Verbum defectivum, sic etiam sunt aio, apage, cædo, ave, salve, vale, faxo vel faxim, aufim, forem, inquio, ovat, memini, odi, cæpi, novi, quæso, desit, infit, dor, for, der, fer, dic, duc, fac.

M. Conjugate hæc verba defectiva?

J. Modus Indicativus tempus præsens, aio, ais, ait. Pluraliter aiunt; aieba--m--s--t--mus--tis--nt. Imperative ai; Conjunct. aias, aiat, aiamus, aiatis, aiant. Imperat. apage. Pluraliter apagite.

Cedo pro cedito. Plur. cedite.

Ave, saive, vale. Plur. te, tote, Infinit. ere.

Faxi--aufi--m--s--t Plur. nt.

Fore--m--s--t Pl. nt. Inf. fore

Inqu---io---is---it---imus---iunt. iebam--iebas--iebat--iebamus--iebatis--iebant. isti---it---ies--iet--iemus--ietis--ient. e--ite--itote--iunto--iam--ias--iat--iamus--iatis iant---iens.

Ovat Participium ovans; memini, odi, cæpi, novi, perfectio cum prole regulariter sunt; memini habet Imperativum.

Quæso Pluraliter quæsumus.

Desit, desi--et--at--eri.

Dor, for, der, fer, tantum leguntur in compositis, ut addor, condor.

Infit tantum in usu est.

These

These Four are Imperative Verbs.

Imperative *scio, fio* want, and *soleo* wants the first person future.

*Sis, &c.* are contracted Verbs, viz. *sis* for *si vis*, *sultis* for *si vultis*, *sodes* for *si audes*, and some others,

*Of improving Verbs.*

Use Makes perfectness, therefore turn these into Latine, &c.

*The Present Tense.*

With all my heart, I am an *Englishman*. Thou art a *Frenchman*. He is a *Dutchman*. We are diligent. Ye are negligent.

They are Truants.

*Præterimperfect Tense.*

I was not in School Yesterday. Thou wast not at Church yesterday.

He was not at home yesterday.

We were idle yesterday.

Ye were obedient yesterday.

They were careful yesterday.

*Præterperfect Tense of Sum.*

I have been at Church; thou hast been in the Garden; he has been at *London*; we have been at School; ye have been at home; they have been in the Hall.

*Præterpluperfect Tense.*

I had not been at Church yesterday, and therefore I was not happy.

He had been with me, but then I was not at Home.

We had not been at School yesterday, &c.

*Future Tense.*

I will be more diligent hereafter than I have been, God willing.

Thou wilt be a learned and

*Dic, duc, fer, fac* Imperativa sunt.

*Scio, fio* Imperativa non habent; *sci & fi* nec *soleo, solebo* futuro.

*Sis, sultis, sodes* sunt Verba contracta ex *si vis, si vultis, si audes, &c.*

*De amplificatione Verborum.*

M. Taurum feret, qui vitulum tulit; veritas igitur hæc Latine, &c.

*Præsens.*

J. Toto corde, Ego sum *Anglus*; tu es *Gallus*; Ille est *Teutonicus*. Nos sumus diligentes; Vos estis negligentes.

Illi sunt Emansores.

*Imperfectum.*

Heri non eram in Scholâ.

Non eras in Templo.

Non erat Domi.

Nos eramus otiosi.

Vos eratis obedientes.

Illi erant seduli.

*Perfectum.*

Ego fui Templo; tu fuisti horto. ille fuit *Londini*; nos fuimus Scholâ; vos fuistis domi; illi fuere aulâ.

*Plusquamperfectum.*

Heri non eram Templo igitur non eram etiam foelix.

Fueras in horto nostro.

Fuerat apud me, sed tunc non fui domi.

Heri Scholâ non fueramus, &c.

*Futurum.*

Posthac ero diligentior quam fui, Deo volente.

Tu eris vir doctus & utilis;

N

pro-

profitable man; he will be a learned man because he is diligent; we will be at School to morrow, God willing; ye shall be dear to me if ye will be diligent; to morrow my Brethren will not be at School.

M. Let us hear the Conjunctive?

My Father will have me be obedient to my Master; that thou be diligent; that he be modest; that we be sober; that ye be early; that they be learned.

*Imperfect Tense.*

My Mothers will is that I should be thy companion; that thou wouldst be in thy chamber by six a clock; if he were godly he would have been obedient; when we were godly Boys we were diligent; I wish ye were temperate, wise; O! that they were obedient to their Parents, &c. through every *Tense*.

M. Let us hear the Imperative?

J. Be thou godly and diligent?  
Do thou be good and obedient?

Let us be silent, or hold our Tongues; see that every one of you boys be obedient? be ye merciful. Let every Boy be at School by seven a Clock to morrow morning.

M. How do you express in Latine?

J. I have got fine cloths.

Thou hast two fair Sisters.

He hath the best Pen.

We have four Sparrows.

Ye have a gallant House.

They have more Books than we, &c.

M. Translate all these with the Verb *est*.

ille erit vir doctus, quia est diligens; cras Deo volente, erimus in Scholâ; eritis mihi chari si obedientes; cras fratres mei non erint domi.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*.

J. Pater vult ut sim obediens Præceptori; ut sis diligens; ut sit modestus; ut simus sobrii; ut sitis matutini; ut sint docti.

*Imperfectum.*

Mater vult ut essem socius tuus; ut esses cubiculo tuo sextâ horâ; si esset pius fuisset obediens; cum essemus pii fuerimus diligentes; Utinam essetis sobrii; O si! essent obedientes parentibus, &c.

M. Audiamus Imperativum?

J. Es pius & diligens.  
Esto bonus & obediens;  
Simus nos taciti.

O vos pueri omnes este obedientes; estote misericordes; omnes pueri cras horâ septimâ sunt in Scholâ, &c.

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine, &c.

J. Ego habeo vestes elegantes.  
Tu habes duas venustas sorores.  
Ille habet Pennam optimam  
Nos habemus quatuor passerres.  
Vos habetis pulchram domum.  
Illi habent plures libros quam nos, &c.

M. Veritas hæc omnia cum verbo *est*.



J. I have fine cloths.  
Thou hast two pleasant Sisters.  
He has got the best Pen.  
We have four Sparrows.  
Ye have a Gallant House, &c.  
Through all Moods and Tenses.  
M. Conjugate *amo* through the Persons.

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they love.

M. What doest thou love?

J. I love God our Heavenly Father, who hath created me; and Christ our Saviour, who hath delivered me from Sin and Death; for the only Son of God with his Blood hath pacified an angry God for us.

I also love the Holy Ghost who by the Word and Sacraments hath sanctified us.

M. What doth he love?

J. He loves Vertue.

M. What do ye love?

J. Good Sciences.

M. What do they love?

J. Neat Books.

M. Conjugate *amo* together with a passive Verb, for Example sake.

J. I love thy Brother, but am not beloved by him.

Thou lovest the Queen, but wilt not be loved by her, &c. throughout.

M. Let us hear the *Conjunctive Mood*?

J. It is my Fathers will that I love thee; that thou lovest me; that he love the Master; that we love honest studies; that ye love one another; that they love the Word of God, &c. throughout.

M. Conjugate *opto* with *precor*.

J. I wish and pray for thee.

Thou wishest and prayest for me.

He wisheth and prays for him.

We wish and pray for you.

J. Sunt mihi elegantes Vestes.  
Sunt tibi duæ venustæ sorores.  
Est illi penna optima.  
Sunt nobis quatuor Passeres.  
Est vobis pulchra domus.  
Sunt illis plures libri quam nos.  
M. Conjugate *amo* per personas?

J. Am o as at amus atis ant, &c.

M. Quid tu amas?

J. Ego amo Deum Patrem Cœlestem, qui creavit me; & Christum Salvatorem nostrum, qui liberavit nos à Peccato & Morte; nam unicus Filius Dei placavit nobis Deum iratum sanguine suo.

Amo etiam sanctum Spiritum qui nos sanctificavit Verbo & Sacramentis.

M. Quid ille amat?

J. Virtutem.

M. Quid vos amatis?

J. Bonas Artes.

M. Quid illi amant?

J. Elegantes Libros.

M. Conjugate *amo* unâ cum passivo, Exempli gratiâ?

J. Ego amo fratrem tuum, sed non amor ab illo.

Tu amas Reginam, sed non amaberis ab illâ, &c. per omnes.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*?

J. Pater vult ut amem te; ut ames me; ut amet Præceptorem; ut amemus honesta Studia; ut ametis vos invicem.

Si ament Verbum Dei, &c.

M. Conjugate *opto* unâ cum *precor*.

J. Ego opto & precor tibi.

Tu optas & precaris mihi.

Ille optat, & precatur illi.

Nos optamus & precamur vobis.

*Ye wish and pray for us.*

*They wish and pray to God, &c. through every Mood and Tense.*

M. Conjugate *doceo* to teach.

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they teach.

M. What do you teach, or are a teaching?

J. I teach, or am a teaching Latine.

M. What doth he teach?

J. Arithmetick.

M. What are ye a teaching?

J. We teach Fencing.

M. What do they teach?

J. They teach good manners, &c.

M. Let us hear the *Conjunctive Mood*?

J. My Father's Will is that I teach thee the Greek Tongue.

That thou teach me Arithmetick.

That he teach him to dance.

That we teach you to Fence.

If ye teach us Geometry, when they have taught them Rhetorick.

M. Conjugate *doceo* together with a passive Verb, for Example.

J. I teach thee Latine that you may teach me Musick.

Thou teachest me to fence, that thou maist be taught by me the Art of Dancing.

He teacheth me Logick, that he may be taught Rhetorick by me, &c.

M. Conjugate *lego* to read?

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they read.

M. What art thou a reading?

J. I am reading Corderius Colloquies.

M. What doth he read?

J. He reads Comenius's Gate.

M. What do ye read?

J. We read the Idiomatical Lexicon.

M. What do they read?

J. Grammar.

Vos optatis & precamini nobis  
Illi optant & precantur Deo, &c.

M. Conjugate *Deceo*?

J. Doce o s t mus tis nt.

M. Quid tu doces?

J. Ego doceo Linguam Latinam.

M. Quid ille docet?

J. Arithmetica.

M. Quid vos docetis?

J. Docemus artem gladiandi.

M. Quid illi docent?

J. Illi docent bonos mores, &c.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*?

J. Pater vult ut doceam te Linguam Græcam.

Ut doceas me Arithmetica.

Ut doceat eum artem saltandi.

Ut doceamus vos artem gladiandi

Si doceatis nos Geometria, cum docuerint illos Rhetoricum.

M. Conjugate *doceo* una cum Passivo, Exempli gratia.

J. Ego doceo te Linguam Latinam ut docear à te Musica.

Tu doces me artem gladiandi; ut docearis à me artem saltandi.

Ille docet me Dialecticam, ut doceatur à me Rhetoricam, &c.

M. Conjugate *lego*?

J. Leg o is it imus itis unt.

M. Quid tu legis?

J. Ego lego Colloquia Corderii.

M. Quid ille legit?

J. Legit Januam Comenii.

M. Quid vos legistis?

J. Legimus Dictionarium Idiomaticum.

M. Quid illi legunt?

J. Grammaticam,

M.

M Let us hear the *Conjunctive*?

J. My Father will *that I read* two chapters every day out of the New Testament.

*That thou read Cicero's Epistles.*

*That he read Helvicius colloquies.*

*That we read prime Authors.*

*That ye read honest Books.*

*That they read the English Chronicles, &c. throughout.*

M. Conjugate *lego* together with a Verb in *or*; for Example sake.

J. I read, speak and write *Latine*.

Thou readest, speakest and writest *Greek*.

He readeth, speaketh and writeth *Hebrew*, &c. through all Moods and Tenses.

M. What *do you do*, or what are you a doing?

J. I exercise my self, and do my endeavour for obtaining of the *Latine*.

I also write and make Themes, &c. through every Mood and Tense.

M. Conjugate *Audio*, *I do hear*.

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they *hear*.

M. What do you willingly hear?

J. A learned Oration.

M. What do ye willingly hear?

J. We willingly hear thee sing.

M. What do they willingly hear?

J. The Master speaking.

M. What News dost thou hear?

J. I have heard no News.

M. What News have ye heard?

J. We heard your Father was dead.

M. Let us hear the *Conjunctive*?

J. My Father will *that I bear* a *Latine* Speech.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*?

J. Pater vult *ut legam* duo Capitula quotidie ex Novo Testamento.

*Ut legas* Epistolas Ciceronis.

*Ut legat* colloquia Helvici.

*Ut legamus* classicos Autores.

*Ut legatis* honestos libros.

*Ut legant* Relationes Anglicanas.

M. Conjugate *lego* una cum Verbo in *or*, Verbi gratia.

J. Ego lego, loquor, & scribo *Latine*.

Tu legis, loqueris & scribis *Græce*.

Ille legit, loquitur & scribit *Hebraice*, &c. per omnes modos & tempora.

M. Quid tu agis?

J. Ego exerceo me & do operam *Linguae Latinae*.

Ego exaro etiam & compono Themata, &c. per omnia.

M. Conjugate *audio*?

J. Audi o s t mus tis unt

M. Quid tu libenter audis?

J. Doctam concionem libenter audio.

M. Quid vos libenter auditis?

J. Libenter audimus te canentē.

M. Quid illi libenter audiunt?

J. Praeceptorem loquentem.

M. Quid Novi audivisti?

J. Nihil Novi audiui.

M. Quid vos audivistis?

J. Audivimus Patrem esse mortuum.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*?

Pater vult *ut audiam* Sermonem *Latinam*.



That thou hear an English Sermon.

That he hear him finish the Discourse, &c. throughout.

M. Let's hear the *Imperative Mood*, and the *Infinitive Mood* also.

J. Hear thou, or do thou hear?

Thou mayst hear me, I cannot hear thee.

I believe that thou hast heard our Minister.

I am going to hear Musick.

### Of a Participle.

M. What is a *Participle*?

J. A *Participle* is a Part of Speech declined with *Case*, which taketh from a Noun, *Gender*, *Case* and *Declension*. they may resolve into Verbs, as, *taught*, i. e. *which doth teach*. From a Verb, *Tense* and *Signification*; from both of them it hath *Number* and *Figure*.

M. How many things belong to a *Participle*?

J. Eight things belong to a *Participle*; *Person*, *Number*, *Case*, *Declension*, *Gender*, *Time* and *Figure*.

Concerning the *Person*, *Number*, *Case*, *Declension*, and *Gender*, the same is to be appointed here which is taught before in a Noun.

M. How many *Tenses* of *Participles*?

J. The *Tenses* of *Participles* are four, and their signification is either *Active* or *Passive*.

The *Participle* of the *present Tense* in *Latine* ends in *ans* or *ens*, but *ing* is the *English* Termination, and is formed from the Ge-

Ut audias Concionem Anglicam.

Ut audiat illum perorantem, &c.

M. *Modum Imperativum* etiam & *Infinitivum*?

J. Audi, audito tu.

Audias me, non possum audire te.

Credo te audivisse concionatorem nostrum.

Eo auditum Musicam, &c.

### De Participio.

M. Quid est *Participium*?

J. *Participium* est Pars Orationis inflexa Casu, quæ à nomine Genera Casus & Declinationem.

à Verbo vero Tempora & significationes; ab utroque Numerum & Figuram accipit.

M. Quot accidentia *Participio*?

J. Octo accidunt *Participio*, *Persona*, *Numerus*, *Casus*, *Declinatio*, *Genus*, *Tempus*, *Significatio* & *Figura*.

De *Personâ*, *Numero*, *Casu*, *Inflexione* & *Genere*, idem hic statuendum, quod suprà in nomine est traditum.

M. Quot tempora *Participiorum*?

J. Tempora *Participiorum* sunt quatuor, & significatio *Active* & *Passive*.

*Præsens* in *ans* vel *ens*, & formatur ex *Gerundio* in *di*, mutando *di* in *s*, ut *laudan di s monen-*  
rund

Gerund in *di*., by changing *di* into *di s*. Non raro fiunt Substantiva. s, as *praising, warning*; they often become Substantives.

Participle of the future in *rus* is of an active signification; and is formed from the latter Supine, by adding *rus*, as *to read, or about to read; to hear, or about to hear*.

But there are eight Verbs which form the Participle of the Future Tense in *rus* irregular, namely, &c. *To argue,*

*To root up.*

*To be.*

*To be born.*

*To know.*

*To die.*

*To rise; and*

*To bring forth.*

The Participle of the preter Tense in *Latine* ends in *tus, sus, xus*, the *English* ending is *d, t, n*, this is also formed from the latter Supine by adding *s*, as *praised, seen, knit*.

The Participle of the Future in *dus* hath a passive signification, and is formed from the Gerund in *di*, by changing *i* into *us*, as, *monendus* to be warned.

M. How manifold is the Figure of a Participle?

J. It is twofold, namely, *simple*, as *breathing*; and *compound*, as, *taking breath*.

### Of an Adverb.

M. What is an Adverb?

J. An *Adverb* is a Part of speech undeclined, which being joined to a Verb perfects and explains its sense by *whither? how? when? how long? how often? how much? wherefore? where? from whence? whether?* and the like interrogatories.

Futurum in *rus*, activæ significationis; & formatur ex posteriori supino addendo *rus*; ut *lecturus, auditu rus*.

Sed octo sunt Verba quæ futurum in *rus*, formant anomala, viz.

*Arguiturus ex arguo.*

*Eruturus ex eruo.*

*Futurus ex fuo.*

*Nasciturus ex nascor.*

*Nosciturus ex nosco.*

*Moriturus ex morior.*

*Oriturus ex orior; &*

*Pariturus ex pario.*

Præteritum in *tus, sus, xus*, formatur etiam ex posteriori supino addendo *s*, ut

*laudatu s, visu s, nexu s.*

Futurum in *dus*, passivæ significationis; formatur autem ex Gerundio in *di*, mutando *i* in *us*, ut *monend i us*.

M. Quotuplex est Figura Participiorum.

J. Duplex, viz. *simplex*, ut *spirans*; & *composita*, ut *respirans*.

### De Adverbio.

M. Quid est Adverbium?

J. Adverbium est pars Orationis, non flexa; quæ adjecta verbo sensum ejus perfectit atque explanat, ut, *quo? quomodo? quando? quousque? quoties? quantum? quare? ubi? unde? utrum, &c.*

*Latine*

*Latine Adverbs* commonly end in *e, o, ter, um, us*.

Adverbs derived from Adjectives, are compared by degrees as they are, and govern the same Cases which the Adjectives do, as, *learnedly, more learnedly than he, most learnedly of them all*.

*Nuper, nuperrime, late, &c.*

Sometimes Neuter Adjectives put on them the form of Adverbs.

And Præpositions also when they govern no Case are changed into Adverbs, as, &c. *I came at length*.

The kind of Adverbs is two-fold; the *Principal*, which hath its rise or beginning from it self, as, *cras, to morrow*.

*Derivative* is of those which are derived from some other word as, *furtim secretly, from furor to steal, Figure* is simple, as, *prudent*; and compound, as, *imprudent*.

### Of a Conjunction.

M. What is a Conjunction?

J. A Conjunction is a part of Speech which jointly tieth together the clauses of a Sentence, *quo* and, *ne* whether or no; *ve* or, are joined to the end of a word, but are construed before it, and so is the compounding part of other words.

Conjunctions for the most part are placed about the beginning of Sentences, but Adverbs about the middle.

The Figure of a Conjunction is simple, as, *nam* for; and compound, as, *namque* and for.

Adverbium frequenter exit in *e, o, ter, um, us*.

Adverbia ab adjectivis nata & comparantur; & eandem etiam constructionem cum nominibus habent, ut,

*Docte, doctius illo; doctissime omnium*.

*Sæpe, sæpius, sæpissime, nostrum*.

*Diu, diutius, diutissime, long, &c.*

Aliquando neutra Adjectiva induunt formam Adverbiorum.

Et Præpositiones etiam cum Casum amittunt, migrant in Adverbia, ut, *longo post tempore veni*.

Species Adverbiorum est duplex; *principalis* quæ ex se originem habet, ut *cras*.

*Derivativa* est eorum quæ nata sunt aliunde, ut, *furtim ex furor*.

*Figura* est simplex, ut, *prudenter*, & composita, ut *imprudenter*.

### De Conjunctione.

M. Quid est Conjunctio?

J. Conjunctio est pars Orationis quæ Sententiarum clausulas aptè connectit.

*que, ne, ve* sunt Encliticæ.

Conjunctiones fere in exordio sententiarum ponuntur, Adverbia vero locantur medio.

*Figura Conjunctionum* est simplex, ut *nam*, & composita, ut *namque*.



Of a Preposition.

M. What is a *Preposition*?

*Preposition* is an undeclined part of Speech, which is put before other parts of Speech either in *composition*, or else in *apposition*.

In *apposition*, as, *he sitteth at the right hand*.

In *composition*, as, *he has admonished*.

Sometimes *Præpositions* are used both ways, as, *I am going to my Father*.

These Five *Præpositions* are usually found set after the Cases they govern, as, *with which, towards England, even to the setting of the Sun*.

M. Which are the accidents of a *Præposition*?

J. To a *Præposition* belongs Case, Government or Construction.

The following *Prepositions* govern an *Accusative Case*, as

To, in the power, against, on this side, about, without.

Towards, at, before, on the other side, beyond, above, towards and within.

Beyond, after, besides, for, nigh to, behind, according to.

By or through, about, about, against, nigh to, between, for, or because, beneath.

*Prepositions* governing or requiring after them an *Ablative case* are, &c. from, from, without, without, with, before, concerning of, out of, openly, before comparatively, for, without.

Privily, in, or, into, under, under, above, signifying motion, have an *accusative* after them; but sig-

De *Præpositione*.

M. Quid est *Præpositio*?

J. *Præpositio* est pars *Orationis* indeclinabilis, quæ aliis *orationis* partibus, vel in *compositione*, vel in *appositione* *præponuntur*.

*Appositione*, ut, *sedit ad dextram*.

*Compositione*, ut *admonuit*.

Aliquando geminantur, ut *ad eo ad patrem*.

Cum, penes, tenus, versus, usque postponi suis casibus inveniuntur, ut, *quibus cum, Anglicam versus ad occidentem usque*.

M. Quæ accidentia *Præpositionis*?

J. *Præpositioni* accidit casus regimen sive constructio, viz.

*Præpositiones* sequentes adjunguntur *Accusativo*.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra.

Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus & intra.

Ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum.

Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, ob, infra.

*Præpositiones* *ablativum* regentes sunt *a, ab, abs, absque, cum, coram, de, e, ex, palam, præ, pro, sine*.

Clam, vel clanculum, in, sub, subter, super significatione motus, *Accusativum* regunt; significatione

nifying rest, govern an ablative.

M. Why do you say, *up to the legs*, by a Genitive, or an Ablative case indifferently.

*Tenus* governs a genitive case Plural, also an ablative in both Numbers.

These six Prepositions are never found but in compound words *am* about, *di* *dis* twice, *re* again, *se* apart, *con* with.

### Of an Interjection.

M. What is an *Interjection*?

J. An *Interjection* is a part of Speech which declares the affection of the mind under a confused voice suddenly broken off, as *O!* *out!*

### Of the Figures belonging to Etymology.

M. What Figures belong to *Etymology*?

J. *Artimery*, *Enallagy*, *Hellenisme* and *Archaisme*.

*Artimery* is when one part of Speech is used instead of another, as *thy skill*, here *scire* is put for *scientia*.

*Enallagy* changeth one Person, Number, Tense, with Mood and Gender for another, as *Ecce*, for *qui mihi charior sum est* *Enallage Genus*. *Sed valebis pro vale est Enallage modi*, &c.

*Hellenisme* is when *Latine* words are declined like to *Greek* words, as *famiiliās* for *familia*, or have a *Greek* construction, as, *cease your noise*, the deceived *Alexis* transported with passion; *irarum* is used for

*catione vero quietis ablativum*.

M. *Quare* dicis *crurum tenus*, vel indifferenter *cruribus tenus*.

J. *Genitivum* pluralem regit *tenus*; *ablativum* etiam tam singularem quam pluralem.

*am*, *di*, *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, sunt *Prepositiones*, sed extra compositionem non inveniuntur.

### De Interjectione.

M. Quid est *Intersectio*?

J. *Intersectio* est pars orationis quæ sub inconditâ voce subito prorumpentem animi affectum demonstrat, ut *O!* *vah!*

### De Etymologiæ Figuris.

M. Quæ *Figuræ* ad *Etymologiam* spectant?

J. *Artimery*, *Enallage*, *Hellenismus*, & *Archaismus*.

Est *Artimery* cum pars altera sermonis alterâ usâ, ut, *scire tuum*, pro *scientia tua*.

*Personam* numerum commutat *Enallage* tempus, cumque modo, genus, ut, *Pereo quod charius est mi*.

*Hellenismus* erit *Phrasis*, aut constructio *Græca*, ut

*Desine clamorum*, *fallunt ardebat Alexin*; *abstinet irarum*.

*Archaisme* tollorizeth old, obsolete and also new coyned words, as, *Ec. for, of me, of thee, an old Woman.*

*Archaismus* admittet vocibus obsoletisque novis, ut, *mis, tis, anuis, i. e. mei, tui, anus.*

Of Syntax.

M. What is *Syntax*?

J. *Syntax* is an Agreeable Disposition of the eight parts of Speech amongst themselves.

M. How many fold is *Syntax*?

*Syntax* is two-fold, compleat, or answering in proportion. And fashioned, or unlike, which is not regular, but departs from the common rules, and yet nevertheless relies upon the authority of good Writers.

M. How many fold is the compleat part of *Syntax*?

J. It is two-fold, *concord*, which is the agreement of words amongst themselves, and *government*, which is the dependance of one word upon another.

Of the Concord of *Syntax* answering in proportion, and the case of the Relative with many other matters worthy to be observed. And first of

*The Concord or Agreement of the Adjective with the Substantive.*

M. Why do you say, *A guilty conscience needs no accuser*, (not) *Ec.*

J. Because *Causa* is of the feminine Gender, Nominative Case, and Singular Number, and those two *Adjectives* must be the same, for whatever answers the question *who?* or *what?* made upon the *Adjective* is the *Substantive* to it.

De Syntaxi.

M. Quid est *Syntaxis*?

J. *Syntaxis* est congrua octo partium Orationis, inter se dispositio.

M. Quotum plex est *Syntaxis*?

J. *Syntaxis* est duplex, perfecta seu analoga quæ est regularis. Et figurata seu Anomala, quæ non est regularis, sed recedit a communibus regulis, & tamen bonorum Scriptorum Autoritate nititur.

M. Quotuplex est perfecta seu Analoga?

J. Duplex, Concordantia quæ est Dictionum, inter se convenientia, & Regimen, quod est dependentia unius dictionis ab aliâ.

De Concordantiis *Syntaxeos*, Analogæ & casu Relativi, cum multis alijs observatu dignissimis. Et primo de

*Concordantia Adjectivi cum Substantivo.*

M. Quare dicis mala causa est filenda (non) malus, filendum?

J. Quia Causa est Fæminini Generis, Nominandi Casus, & Singularis Numeri, & Conveniendæ sunt cum Substantivo Causa.

M. By



M. By what rule?

J. Adjectives and also Participles, and Pronouns agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number, and Case, altho' a Verb come between them, as, *this Book must be often read. Death is an Enemy.*

M. How do you say in Latine, &c.

J. My Father and Mother are well, (not).

M. By what rule?

J. Two or more Substantives singular, coupled by, or having a conjunction between them, have an Adjective plural, which shall agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender, as;

*A fever, slothfulness, the head-ach, and a defluxion of Rheum.*

*These things arise to thee from mid-day sleep.*

M. Why do you say I have taught thee many things, but you have forgot them all (not) &c.

J. If the words (*matter or thing*) follow an adjective in English (*matter or thing*) is totally rejected, and the adjective put in the neuter gender without a substantive, as; *many Men say many things.*

M. Why is the word *Men* understood?

J. An adjective is sometimes put substantively; and may also have another adjective to agree with it in gender, number, and case. as; *much pains. A learned poor Man is more excellent than an unlearned rich Man.*

M. But why dont you say *many things are said by many Men*?

J. If a passive English be to be rendered by a Latine Deponent;

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Adjectiva, ut & Participia, & Pronomina Substantivis, Genere, Numero, & Casu concordant etiam, cum verbum intercesserit, ut *Hic liber sæpe legendus. Mors est inimica.*

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine, &c.

J. Pater & Mater sunt salvi (non) salvi.

M. Quà regulà?

J. Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia per conjunctionem copulata habent Adjectivum plurale, quod cum digniori Genere concordat, ut;

*Febris, pigrities, capitis dolor atq; catarrhus.*

*Hæc tibi proveniunt ex somno meridiano.*

M. Quare dicis *docui te multa sed oblitus es omnia* (non) *multas res, omnes res*?

J. Si (res) sequitur adjectivum (res) rejicitur & adjectivum in neutro genere absolute ponitur, ut; *multi multa loquuntur.*

M. Quare non *multi viri*?

J. Adjectivum aliquando substantive ponitur; & habeat etiam adjectivum secum convenire, ut; *Multum laboris. Pauper doctus indocto divite præstantior.*

M. Sed quare non *multa dicuntur à multis*?

J. Si passivum Anglice facturum per Deponentem Latine; then

then  
into

M.

J.

from

M.

Deriv

J.

part

taken

fyng

or pe

a sub

The

tiz

M.

J.

keth

M.

relati

J.

&c. m

substa

der, n

tededa

But

case,

lowing

ned, c

direct

minat

I have

here q

Verb.

Thou

dation

M.

There

Dunge

J. V

because

two A

then the passive is to be varied into an active.

M. Turn this into Latine, &c.

J. The word *rex* is derived from *rego*, to rule.

M. *Rex* is masculine, why not *Derivatus*?

J. Because a sentence, or the part of a sentence, or any word taken materially (as *rex* is) signifying the word, and not the thing or person may supply the place of a substantive.

*The Agreement of the Relative with its Substantive.*

M. Say in Latine?

J. He is a wise Man that speaketh few things.

M. Why not *quod* a neuter relative?

J. The relative adjective *qui*, &c. must needs agree with its substantive going before it in gender, number and person; the antecedent answers *who*? or *what*?

But they must not agree in case, for that answers some following word whereon it is governed, else it is the nominative to direct the Verb, if no other nominative come between them, as, *I have the letters which thou sent*, here *quas* is accusat. following the Verb.

*Thou art not worthy of the commendation which is bestowed on thee.*

M. Whether is it better to say, There is a place which is called a Dungeon *qui* or *quod*?

J. Whethersoever is well said, because a Relative placed between two Antecedents of divers Gen-

eris passivum variatum in activum.

M. *Veritas* hoc Latine? &c.

J. *Rex* derivatum est a *rego*.

M. Quare non dixisti *Derivatus*?

J. Quia oratio, aut aliquod membrum orationis; vel dictio aliqua materialiter sumpta suppleat locum substantivi.

*Concordantia Relativi cum Substantivo.*

M. Dic Latine, &c.

J. Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur.

M. Quare non *quod* pauca?

J. Relativum cum antecedente suo substantivo necesse est genere, numero, & personâ consentire.

Casu autem convenire necesse non est, nam is sequenti voce respondet à quâ regitur; aut præcedit Verbum si nullus nominativus interferitur ut; *sunt mihi literæ quas misisti.*

*Tu non dignus es ea laude quam tibi tribui.*

M. Utrum melius dictum, Est locus qui Tullianum appellatur, vel *quod*?

J. Utrum est bene dictum, quia relativum inter duo antecedentia diversorum generum collo-

ders, rightly answereth both to the following and the former, as, *Not far from that River which they call Salia*; here *quod* would agree with *flumine*, and *quem* with *Saliam* in Gender, Number and Person.

M. Which is the Rule, *the Bow and Arrows which thou hast broken*?

J. Two or more *Antecedents* singular with a *Conjunction* copulative coming between, have a *Relative* plural which agreeth with the more worthy Gender, as

*Thou sleepest much and drinkest often, both which are naught for the body.*

M. Why do you say, *What a one was he? he was such a one as I never saw*; here *qualem* follows *vidi*.

J. Nouns *Interrogatives* and *Indefinites* follow the Rule of the *relative*, that is, by answering the following Word.

M. *I came in season, which is the cheifest thing of all*; which is the *antecedent* in this sentence?

J. *To come in season* answers *who* or *what*, because a sentence, or any part thereof is sometimes put for *Antecedent*.

### Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative Case.

M. Why do you say, *idleness makes naughtiness*? (not)

J. The *verb personal* agrees with the *Nominative Case* in Number and Person, although the *Nominative* be understood, it answers *who* or *what*, as, *labour overcomes all things. I am.*

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. *I and my Brother have been sick.*

*catum tam sequenti, quàm antecedenti rectè respondet, ut,*

*Non procul ab eo flumine quod (vel quem) Saliam vocant.*

M. *Quæ nam est regula, Arcus & calami quæ fregisti?*

J. Duo vel plura *Antecedentia* singularia, intercedente *conjunctione Copulativâ* habent *relativum plurale* quod cum digniori genere concordat, ut

*Tu multum dormis, & sæpè potas quæ ambo sunt corpori inimica.*

M. *Quare dicis, qualis erat; Talis erat qualem nunquam vidi?*

J. *Interrogativa & Indefinita* regulam *relativorum* sequuntur (hoc est) respondentem voce sequenti.

M. *In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum*; quodnam est *antecedens*?

M. *In tempore venire*; quia oratio aut aliquod membrum orationis interdum ponitur pro *antecedente*.

### Concordantia Verbi cum Nominativo.

M. *Quare dicis oria dant vitia (non) datis vitia?*

J. *Verbum personale* cohæret cum *Nominativo Numero & Personâ*, quamvis subintelligitur, ut *labor vincit omnia. Sum*

M. *Veritas hoc Latinâ?*

J. *Ego & frater agrovi fuimus.*

M. Why



M. Why not some other Number or Person?

J. Because two or more *nominative cases singular* tyed together by a *Conjunction*, also *nouns collective*, or such which in the singular number signifie a multitude, have a verb plural which agreeth with the more worthy person, as, *the People lament.*

*Both are deluded by deceit.*

M. *Their tears were blood*, which is the Nominative Case?

J. Take whether of them you please: For a Verb put between two nominative cases of divers Numbers may indifferently agree with either of them.

M. *It is the property of Mankind to go astray*; which is the Nominative?

J. *Errare to err*, because a Verb of the Infinitive Mood is sometimes put instead of a *Nominative case*.

To learn Arts or Sciences faithfully mollifieth Mens manners, what mollifieth manners?

J. To learn Sciences faithfully.

M. By what rule?

J. A sentence, or some part of a sentence, is sometimes put instead of a *Nominative case*.

M. *Rex* a King is derived from *rego* to Rule, what is derived from *Rego*?

J. *Rex*, because any word taken materially supplys the place of a *Nominative case*.

M. It repenteth me of this deed, which is the rule?

J. A Verb impersonal hath not a *Nominative case* before it, because it is turned into such case as the Verb governs or requires after it, as; *I am weary of my life.*

M. *Quare (non) fui neque fuerint.*

J. *Quia* duo vel plura *Nominativa singularia* per *conjunctionem copulata*; *Nomina etiam collectiva* habent *verbum plurale* quod cum *digniori personâ* concordat, ut,

*Populus lugent.*

*Uterque deluduntur dolis.*

M. *Sanguis erant lachrymæ*; quinam est Nominativus?

J. *Utrum* horum mavis accipe, *quia* *verbum* inter duos *Nominativos diversorum Numerorum* positum cum alterutro convenire potest.

M. *Errare humanum est*, quinam est Nominativus?

J. *Errare*, *quia* *Infinitivus* interdum ponitur vice *Nominativi*.

M. *Didicisse fideliter artes*, *Emollit mores*. Quid *Emollit mores*?

J. *Didicisse fideliter artes.*

M. Per quam regulam?

J. *Oratio*, aut aliquod *membrum orationis* interdum ponitur vice *Nominativi*.

M. *Rex* derivatum est à *Rego*, quid derivatum est à *Rego*?

J. *Rex* *quia* *dictio aliqua materialiter sumpta* supplet locum *Nominativi*.

M. *Pænetet me hujus facti*, quænam est regula?

J. *Verbum impersonale nominativum* non habet *quia* *vertitur in alium Casum*, & *regitur à verbo* ut; *Tædet me vita.*

Agree-

*Agreement of the Answer with the Question, and of one substantive with another.*

M. By what name are you called?

J. *Joh.*

M. Why do you answer in the Ablative, and not in some other case.

J. Because the word asking, and the word answering, shall be the same case and tense.

M. What name hast thou?  
Ec. Of what name are you? *Genit.*  
To what name do you answer?  
*Dat.* What name have you? *Accusat.*

M. What doth a Souldier buy?  
*A Sword.*

Who buys a Sword? *A Soldier.*

What doth a Shoemaker sell?  
*Shoes.*

Who selleth Shoes? *A Shoemaker.*

What use are shoes for? Shoes are fitted to the Feet.

Gloves? To the hands.

Boots? To the Legs.

Who shaves with a Razor? a Barber.

Who hews with an Axe? a Carpenter.

Who sews with an Awl? a Shoemaker.

Who sews with an Needle? a Taylor.

Who delves with a Shovel? a Ditcher.

Who mows with a Sythe? a Reaper.

Concerning what matter doth the Lawyer debate, reason, or dispute? about the Laws.

*Concordantia Redditivi cum Interrogativo & Substantivi cum Substantivo.*

M. Quo nomine appellaris?

J. *Johanne.*

M. Quare (non) *Johannem.*

J. Quia interrogativum & ejus Redditivum ejusdem casus & temporis erunt.

M. Quid est tibi nomen? *Johannes.* Cujus nominis es? *Johannis.* Cui nomini respondes? *Johanni.* Quod nomen habes? *Johannem.*

M. Quid emit miles? J. *Gladium.*

Quis emit Gladium? Miles.

Quid vendit sutor? Calceos.

Quis vendit Calceos? Sutor.

Cui re accommodantur calcei? Calcei accommodantur pedibus?

Chirothecæ? Manibus.

Ocreæ? Cruribus.

Quis radit novacula? Tonfor.

Quis dolat Ascia? Fabor lignarius.

Quis fuit subulâ? Sutor.

Quis fuit acu? Sartor.

Quis fodit ligone? Foffor.

Quis metit falce? Messor.

De quâ re differit Causidicus? De legibus.

The

The Merchant? about Ship-  
ping.

The Fowler? concerning Birds.

The Soldier? of Battle or En-  
gagement.

The Plowman? about his Oxen.

The Scholar? concerning his  
Books.

Who debates both about War  
and Peace?

The King reasons concerning  
both.

About Bulls? The Plowman.

Concerning Dogs? the Hunt-  
man.

About Diseases? the Physician.

What use is a Cup without  
Drink?

It is destitute of use.

A Salt-seller without Salt?

It fails at a need.

Where is Bread to be had?

At the Bakers.

What is to be had at the Ba-  
kers? Bread.

Where is Wine to be had?

At the Vintner's Tavern.

Where do Scholars meet?

In the School, and stay therein.

Against whom doth an Artifi-  
cer strive?

With an Artificer.

A Poet? Against a Poet.

A Musician? Against a Musician.

A Scholar? against a Scholar.

For whom doth a Father act?

For a Son.

For whom doth the Son act?

For his Father.

For whom doth the Husband  
act? For his Wife.

For whom doth the Wife act?

For her Husband.

What is to be exercised to-  
wards God? Godliness.

What towards Parents?

Obedience.

Mercator? De Navibus.

Auceps? De Avibus.

Miles? De Præliis.

Arator? De Bobus.

Discipulus? De Libris.

Quis differit de Bello & Pace?

Rex de utroque differit.

De Tauris? Arator.

De Canibus? Venator.

De morbis? Medicus.

Poculum sine potu quo est?

Destituit usum.

Salinum sine sale?

Destituit usum.

Ubi habetur panis?

Apud penes pistorem.

Quid habetur penes pistorem?

Panis.

Ubi habetur Vinum?

Apud penes cauponem.

Ubi conveniunt Discipuli?

In Scholâ, & manent in Scholâ.

Quem certat Artifex?

Cum Artificem.

Poeta? contra Poetam.

Musicus? contra Musicum.

Discipulus? contra discipulum.

Pro quo agit Pater?

Pro Filio.

Pro quo agit Filius?

Pro Patre.

Pro quo agit maritus?

Pro Uxore.

Pro quo agit Uxor?

Pro marito.

Quid exercitur erga Deum?

Pietas.

Quid erga Parentes?

Obedientia.

P

Quid



What towards Brethren ?

Love or Charity.

Of what is a Boy made ?

Of an Infant.

Of what is a Youth made ?

Of a Boy.

A Man ?

Is made of a Youth.

An old man ?

Is made from man.

An old woman ? Of a Girl.

From a Novice ? is made one experienced.

Of a Fawn ? a Hart is made.

Of a Lamb ? is made a Sheep.

Of an Egg ? is made a young Fowl.

Of Fruit what is made ? a Tree.

Of a Grape ? a Vine is made, &c.

M. How do you say in Latine ?

J. Thy Brother *John*.

M. Why not *fratris* the Genitive case ?

J. Because Nouns have been named *apposition*, when two or more Substantives happen together without a Conjunction between them, relating to the same matter, are appointed to be put in the same case, as *Mark Tully Cicero wrote these Letters*.

Of Government. Nominative.

M. Why do you say, *I never drink fasting* ?

J. Because both before and after them have a Nominative Case Verbs which signifie the State, Condition, Habit, Gesture, Behaviour, Demeanour or Constitution of any person or thing ; as, *He stands straight ; He is gone to Bed supperless*.

M. I am called *Martin* (non) why ?

J. Because both before and af-

Quid erga fratres ?

Dilectio.

Ex quo fit puer ?

Ex infante.

Ex quo fit adolescens ?

Ex puero ?

Vir.

Fit ex adolescente.

Senex ?

Fit ex viro.

Anus ? Anus fit ex puella.

Ex Tyrone ? fit Veteranus.

Ex hinnulo ? fit cervus.

Ex Agno ? fit ovis.

Ex ovo ? fit pullus.

Ex fructu quid fit ? fit arbor.

Ex uva ? fit vitis, &c.

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine ?

J. Johannes frater tuus.

M. Quare non fratris ?

J. Quia *appositionem* vocarunt cum duo vel plura substantiva sine conjunctione de eadem re dicuntur in eodem casu ut, *Marcus Tullius Cicero scripsit has Epistolas*.

De Regimine. Nominativus.

M. Quare dicis, *Ego nunquam bibo jejunus*, (non) *jejunum*.

J. Quia ante & post se Nominativum habent verba quæ statum ut Gestum Personæ vel Rei significant, ut, *stat erectus ; iocubitum incœnatus*.

M. Ego vocor *Martinus* (non) *Martinum*, Per quam regulam ?

J. Quia ante & post se

ter  
ver  
luin  
ing  
ed n  
fals  
T  
the  
M  
M  
J  
be a  
M  
the  
J  
ter  
Cas  
be,  
be r  
tarr  
the  
T  
I  
fide  
T  
here  
I  
as I  
I  
one  
foun  
T  
one  
seve  
M  
wit  
tive  
J  
Cas  
the  
last  
ter

ter them have a Nominative case verbs passives esteeming or valuing, of understanding, of naming, and of calling, as,

*Thy Brother is accounted a learned man. Thou hast been often found false.*

*The King is stiled the Father of the Country.*

*My Brother is named John.*

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. No Man is noble unless he be a lover of Vertue,

M. Why the Nominative after the Verbs?

J. Because both before and after them have a Nominative Case, &c. *I am, I might or should be, I am made or done, to appear, to be reputed, to escape, to excite, to tarry, to be born, to arise, as, I wish these things should be false.*

*The Word was made flesh.*

*I have appeared a Patron on this side.*

*Thou wilt become a learned man hereafter.*

*I will continue thy friend as long as I live.*

*I was born a Boy in the Year one thousand six hundred ninety four, 1694.*

*Thou wast born a Boy in the Year one thousand six hundred eighty seven.*

*Cases alike.*

M. I know you have a good wit; why has not esse a Nominative after it?

J. Because *te* is of the ablative Case. And the Infinitive Moods of the verbs spoken of in the three last Rules will have like cases after them which they have before

nominativum habent verba passiva æstimandi, cognoscendi, nuncupandi & vocandi, ut,

*Frater tuus habetur vir doctus. Tu sæpe falsus repertus es.*

*Rex appellatus est Pater Patriæ.*

*Frater meus nominatur Johannes.*

M. *Veritas hoc Latine, &c.*

J. *Nobilis est nemo, nisi sit virtutis amator.*

M. *Quare non neminem amatorem?*

J. *Quia ante & post se Nominativum habent, sum, forem, fio, appareo, clueo, evado, existo, maneo, nascor, orior, ut,*

*Urnam hæc vana forent.*

*Verbum factum est Caro.*

*Ego hinc causæ Patronus extiti.*

*Tu evades aliquando vir doctus.*

*Manebo tuus amicus quamdiu vixero.*

*Ego natus sum anno millesimo sexcentesimo nonagesimo quarto puer.*

*Tu natus ex anno octogesimo septimo puer.*

*Pares Casus.*

M. Scio te esse acri ingenio (non) acre ingenium, quare?

J. *Quia te est auferendi casus. Et infinitivi esse, fore, fieri, haberi, videri, & similia ante & post se requirunt pares casus, ut,*

them, as, *I am glad you have the matter to your hearts desire.*

*Your Father seems to me a good man.*

*I hear you are now become more diligent. I believe that he is accounted a learned man.*

*Nom. Gen. Accusat. & Ablat.*

M. What cases do, &c. more or less, more largely govern?

*Plus, minus, amplius*, are joined to, or require after them a *Nominative, Genitive, or Accusative*, promiscuously, as *three hundred more. More than fifty enemies.*

*He went more than five hundred steps in less than two hours space.*

*Nom. Dat. Abl.*

M. What case doth *opus* govern?

J. *Opus* and *Usus* signifying *need* or *occasion*, require a *Nominative* or an *Ablative* of the thing with a *Dative* of the person to whom any thing is attributed, as,

*I use it my self.*

*I want Money.*

*Nominative and Accusative.*

M. See what a *condition* we are in; why *status*?

J. The *Adverbs en* and *ecce* signifying *behold*, require either a *Nominative* or an *Accusative* case, as, *Lo another.*

*Genitive Case.*

M. Why do you say, it concerns both *Paul* and *Peter*?

J. *Sum, forem, fio, interest, refert*, require a *Genitive* case when they signify *duty, possession* and *property*, as, *Whose Pen is this? my Sisters.*

*Gaudeo rem fuisse tibi cordi.*

*Tuus pater mihi videri vir bonus.*

*Audio te jam fieri diligentiores.*  
*Credo illum haberi virum doctum.*

*Nom. Gen. Accusat. Ablat.*

M. *Plus, minus, amplius, quos casus regunt?*

J. *Nominativo, Genitivo. Accusativo vel Ablativo plus, minus, amplius junguntur, ut,*

*Plus tricenta.*

*Plus quinquaginta hostium.*

*Plus quingenti passus ixit minus duabus horis.*

*Nom. Dat. Ablat.*

M. *Quem casum regit opus?*

J. *Opus & Usus regunt Nominativum vel ablativum rei; cum Dativo personæ cui aliquid attribuitur, ut*

*Ipse usurus sum.*

*Opus est mihi pecuniâ.*

*Nominative & Accusative.*

M. *Ecce tibi status noster, quare?*

J. *Nominativum et Accusativum adverbia en & ecce requirunt, ut en alterum.*

*Casus Genitivus.*

M. *Quare dicis Pauli ac Petri refert?*

J. *Genitivum postulant, sum, forem, fio, interest, refert, cum officium, possessionem vel proprietatem significant, ut, Cujus est hæc pen-na? Sororis.*

*God*



God forbid that ever our Country should ever be made the French. It is every bodies interest to do well.

M. Why then do you say, *It is my duty*, and *meum* a nominative.

J. It is good for me to do this on this manner, *mea* being ablative.

J. The verb *est* governs a nominative neuter, if *duty* or *welfare* be intended. And after *interest* and *refert* we read the ablatives *mea*, *tuâ*, *suâ*, *nostrâ*, *vestrâ*, *cujâ*, as, *Our staying here is not for your advantage*.

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. The day before the *Calends*.

M. Why?

J. *Adverbs* signifying Place, Time and Quantity, also, &c. to be busie, to pity, and to have pity upon, require a Genitive Case after them, as,

*He is to be found no where.*

*Truce of Complements.*

*I have business enough of my own.*

*Have pity upon thine own stock.*

M. How do you say in Latine?

J. *William* is the strongest King, because if many things of the same kind are compared together amongst themselves, we use the superlative degree, which will have a Genitive Case Plural after it.

M. Why the fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom (not) &c.

J. The latter of two Substantives signifying several matter is joyned with the former by a Genitive Case, as, *The love of learning in all boys is commended.*

M. What case doth *petax* govern?

*Deus prohibet ne nostra regio aliquando fiat Galliarum.*

*Interest omnium recte facere.*

M. Quare igitur dicis *meum est*? *mea* interest hoc ita facere.

J. Verbum *est* si officium indicatur regit Nominativum neutrum.

Post *interest* etiam & *refert* legimus ablativos *mea*, *tuâ*, *suâ*, *nostrâ*, *vestrâ*, *cujâ*, ut,

*Tuâ refert nos hinc abire.*

M. *Veritas* hoc Latine, &c;

J. *Pridie Calendarum.*

M. Quare?

J. Genitivum postulant adverbia loci, temporis & quantitatis; *fatigo*, etiam *misereor*, & *miseresco*, ut,

*Nusquam loci invenitur.*

*Satis Ceremoniæ.*

*Rerum ego mearum fategi.*

*Generis miseresce tui.*

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine?

J. *Regum Gulielmus est fortissimus*: Quia si multa ejusdem generis inter se comparantur utimur gradu superlativo cum Genitivo plurali.

M. Quare *Initium sapientiæ est timor Domini* (non) *De sapientiâ*,

J. Substantivum cum substantivo rei diversæ casu Genitivo jungitur, ut, *amor discendi laudatur in omnibus pueris.*

M. Quem casum regit *petax*?

J. *Instar* likeness, and also adjectives ending in *ax*, and these which signifie *care, desire, remembrance, fear, praise, knowledge*, and their contraries, or whatever expresseth an affection of the mind, or dividing, do require after them a Genitive Case, as,

One desirous of Money.

Thy Brother is careful to perform his part or duty.

Thou art careless of thy renown.

He that is desirous of learning, learneth many things.

Live mindful of Death.

I will not forget thee.

Don't be so afraid of a Storm.

A mind undaunted at Death.

No Mortal is wise at all times.

My Father is expert in all things.

He is skilful in Arithmetick; but ignorant in Geometry.

There are more bad Boys than good ones.

M. Why do you say my Brother studieth at Oxford (not)

J. To the question *where?* is answered by *Domus* a House, *rus* the Country, and also proper names of places, provided they be of the first or second Declension, and singular only, in the Genitive Case, as, *I was born at London, he lived at Oxford, he is at Home; He was famous both in the Wars, and at Home also.*

Genitive and Accusative.

M. How do you say in Latine?

J. I am sorry for it, or it repents me, or I repent of this (not)?

J. Because these 6 impersonal Verbs require an Accusative of the person, with a Genitive of the thing following that, as

J. Genitivos addiscunt *instar*, adjectiva etiam in *ax*; & quæ *curam, desiderium, memoriam, metum, laudem, notitiam*, & his contraria; aut quæcunque animi affectionem vel partitionem significant, ut *instar omnium*.

*Pecuniarum petax.*

*Frater est diligens officii sui.*

*Tu es incuriosus famæ tuæ.*

*Qui est cupidus discendi, discen multa.*

*Vive memor lethi.*

*Non ero immemor tui.*

*Non es adeo timidus procellæ.*

*Mens interrita lethi.*

*Nemo mortalium omnibus bonis sapit.*

*Pater est gnarus omnium rerum.*

*Peritus est Arithmeticæ, sed imperitus Geometricæ.*

*Plures puerorum sunt mali quam boni.*

M. Quare dicis frater meus studet *Oxonix?* non *Oxonix*.

J. Ad quæstionem *ubi?* respondetur *Domus, Rus*, & propria etiam nomina locorum, modo sint primæ vel secundæ declinationis singularia in Genitivo, ut *natus Londini, vixit Oxoniæ. Est Domi Belli, domique clarus.*

Genitive and Accusative.

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine,

J. *Pænetet me huius facti* (non) *de hoc facto.* M. Quâ regulâ?

J. Quia *Pænetet, piget, pudet, tædet, miseret* & *miserescit* accusativum personæ, sequente Genitivo rei; vel infinitivo requirunt, ut,

A  
me ibi  
You  
ashame  
I an  
I an  
He

Geniti  
M.  
To  
J.  
brance  
disting  
an Ac  
with a  
He  
It i  
son to  
forget  
Old  
things  
spect  
I ha  
ter —

M.  
J.  
Bec  
disprai  
semble  
Geniti  
a Boy  
honest  
M.  
two in  
M.  
pretii  
Poti  
Verbs  
taxing  
and g  
or Abl  
ing th  
They b  
not sel  
not be

A pretty while ago it repented  
me that I did it,

Your Brother will be very much  
ashamed thereof.

I am weary of life

I did pity thy Brother.

He hath pity upon thee.

Genitive, Accusative and Ablative.

M. Turn this into Latine ;

To forget their own business.

J. Because verbs of remem-  
brance and forgetfulness without  
distinction govern a Genitive or  
an Accusative, or an Ablative,  
with a præposition, as,

He remembreth his promise.

It is a foolish property for a per-  
son to see other mens faults, and  
forget their own.

Old men remember all those  
things which they took care to re-  
spect

I have been mindful of this mat-  
ter — of thee.

Genitive and Ablative.

M. Say in Latine ?

J. A Man of no Credit, or, &c.

Because words signifying praise,  
dispraise, and such as nearly re-  
semble them, govern either a  
Genitive or an Ablative Case, as,  
a Boy of a comely countenance and  
honest bashfulness.

M. A Bird in hand is worth  
two in the Bush.

M. Why doth *emo* require  
*pretii* or *pretio* ?

Potior to enjoy or possess, and  
Verbs of buying and selling, of  
taxing or rating, of purchasing  
and giving, require a Genitive  
or Ablative of the word signifi-  
ing the price and excels ; as,  
They have new Books. We must  
not sell that for Gold which can-  
not be purchased again with Gold.

*Famdudum pœnituit me id fuisse.*

*Valde pudebit fratrem istius rei.*

*Tædet me vitæ.*

*Miserebat me tui fratris.*

*Miserefcit tui.*

Genitiv. Accusat. Ablat.

M. *Veritas hoc Latine.*

*Oblivisci suorum vel de suis.*

J. Quia verba memoriæ & ob-  
livionis promiscuè vel Genitivum  
vel Accusativum regunt, vel abla-  
tivum cum præpositione, ut,

*Data fidei reminiscitur.*

*Proprium est stultitiæ alienum  
vitia cernere & oblivisci suorum.*

*Omnia quæ curant senes memine-  
runt.*

*Memini de hac re---de te.*

Genitivus & Ablativus.

M. Dic Latine, &c.

J. *Vir nullius fidei, vel nullâ fide.*

Quia aut Genitivum aut Abla-  
tivum regunt *laus vituperium* &  
quæ hinc affinia, ut,

*Est ingenui vultûs puer inge-  
nuique pudoris.*

M. *Ego spem pretio non emo  
quare ?*

J. Potior & verba mercandi,  
taxandi, contrahendi, adsciscunt  
Genitivum vel Ablativum præti  
& excessûs, ut,

*Potius sunt libris novis.*

*Non vendendum est auro quod  
redimi auro non potest.*



*I don't sell for more than others, moreover, perhaps for less.*

*How much doth this Pen-knife stand you in? A Great.*

M. How do you say in Latine?

He is discharged of Neglect.

J. Because verbs of accusing, discharging, condemning, admonishing and of supposing, govern a Genitive case, which signifie the appearance of truth, or an ablative which signifie the sort or fashion.

M. And what sort of verb is *absolutus est*?

J. It is a verb of acquitting?

*He condemneth his Son in law of wickedness.*

*Make him know what he has been, or what he was formerly.*

*Rich men now-a-days are more esteemed than learned men.*

*If he be an unjust Judge against me, I will condemn him for it.*

M. Turn this into Latine?

*I want new Books.*

J. Because Adjectives and verbs which signifie plenty, want and poverty, one while take after them a Genitive and sometimes an Ablative, as

*This man abounds in all things.*

*Skilful in all things.*

M. Say in Latine.

J. I was never sick, or my body was never diseased.

Because we join a Genitive or an Ablative to the verb *est*, and to a substantive also when thereby we describe the form or quality of a person or thing, as,

*She is a woman of a great age, with a great Head and a red Mouth.*

*He is a man of no value, of no advice, of no request.*

*Non vendo pluris quam alii, etiam fortasse minoris.*

*Quanti constat tibi hoc scalpellum? Thalero Imperiali.*

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine?

*Negligentiæ absolutus est.*

J. Quia verba accusandi, absolvendi, damnnandi, admonendi & exstimandi Genitivum regunt qui speciem fidei significant, vel ablativum qui genus notant.

M. Quale autem hoc verbum *absolutus est*?

J. Est verbum absolvendi.

*Sceleris condemnat generum suum.*

*Admoneto illum pristinae fortunæ.*

*Divitiæ jam pluris habentur quam docti.*

*Si in me iniquus est Judex, condemnabo illum eodem crimine.*

M. Veritas hoc Latine, &c.

*Jam ego novis libris egeo.*

J. Quia Adjectiva & verba quæ copiam, inopiam & indigentiam significant modo Genitivum, modo Ablativum post se recipiunt, ut,

*Hic vir omnium rerum abundat.*

*Expers omnibus.*

M. Dic Latine.

J. Nunquam ægroto fui corpore, vel ægroti corporis.

Quia Genitivum vel Ablativum verbo *est*; & substantivo etiam subjicimus cum formam aut qualitatem alicujus describimus, ut,

*Mulier magno natu, magni capitis & ore rubicundo est.*

*Est homo nullius pretij, nullius consilij, vel nullo numero.*

Dative

M.  
Book,  
J. B  
signify  
Case,  
I be  
Books.  
Don  
long ha  
Con  
er wise  
I ha  
Featur  
You  
M.  
hard n  
(not)  
J. A  
requir  
person  
profit,  
sion,  
contra  
If y  
So  
He  
tue wh  
how t  
when l  
I gi  
have s  
me.  
Goo  
Paren  
Not  
than  
conjug  
A S  
a Fish  
Why  
this B  
M.  
good  
J.  
these

*Dative Case.*

M. Why do you say. I have a Book, thou hast Books?

J. Because we use the Verbest, signifying *having* with a Dative Case, as,

*I hear thy Brother hath got new Books.*

*Don't you know that Kings have long hands.*

*Consider that old men have greater wisdom or discretion.*

*I have 14 Nymphs of excellent Features.*

*You have silly, shattered Goods*

M. Which is the Rule, *it is a hard matter to please every Body,* (not)?

J. All Verbs, and many Nouns, require a Dative Case of the person or thing which signifies profit, help, favour, study, submission, likeness, pleasure, and their contraries, as,

*If you please.*

*So it pleased my Mother.*

*He that is not accustomed to virtue whilst he is young, knoweth not how to disuse himself from vice when he grows old.*

*I give you large thanks that you have so diligently kept all things for me.*

*Good Boys willingly obey their Parents.*

*Nothing is more profitable to Boys than to decline Nouns, and to conjugate Verbs often.*

*A Scholar can live any where, as a Fisher can in any part of the Sea.*

*Why are you so troublesome to this Boy?*

M. Why do you say, *It is a good turn for him* (not)?

J. Verbs compounded with these Adverbs *bene, well, male bad-*

*Dativus.*

M. Quare dicis liber est mihi; libri sunt tibi?

J. Quia verbo est in habendi significatione cum Dativo utimur, ut,

*Audio fratri tuo esse novis libris.*

*An nescis longas Regibus esse manus.*

*Adde quod est senibus rerum prudentia major.*

*Sunt mihi his septem præstanti corpore Nymphae.*

*Sit tibi curia supellex.*

M. Quænam est regula omnibus placere difficile est (non) omnes?

J. Omnia Verba & multa Nomina Dativum adsciscunt ejus rei vel personæ significantia commodum, auxilium, beneficium, studium, submissionem, similitudinem, voluptatem, & his contraria, ut,

*Si tibi placet.*

*Sic matri placuit.*

*Qui non assuescit virtui dum juvenescit a vitijs nescit desuescere quando senescit.*

*Habeo tibi gratias magnas quod tam diligenter omnia mihi asservasti.*

*Boni pueri libenter obsequuntur suis parentibus.*

*Nilil pueris est utilius quam sæpe declinare & conjugare.*

*Omne solum fori patria est, ut piscibus æquor.*

*Cur ita es molestus huic puero.*

M. Quare dicis huic benefactum est (non) hoc benefactum?

J. Dativum postulant verba composita cum *bene, male, satis,*

Q ly,

ly, *satis* enough; or the Prepositions *ad* to, *ante* before, *con* with, *de* of, *in* in, *inter* between, *ob* for, *post* after, *before*, *for*, *under*, *above*, require a Dative case, as,

*Thou hast paid or satisfied this man.*

*He lived with us.*

*Danger hangs over all.*

*He was present at this business.*

*He preferreth an unjust Peace before a just War.*

*Thou hast excelled thy elders in Learning.*

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. *I must expect my Brother* (not) because Adjectives ending in *us* and *bilis*, and also Participles of the future tense in *rus* (the verb *est* being added thereto) we elegantly use for the words *must* or *ought* with a Dative Case, as

*O Julius, worthy to be remembered by me behind none of my companions.*

*The Wood was not to be pierced through by any Star.*

M. How do you say in Latine?

J. *Always beware what you say of any body, and to whom you speak it.*

M. Why not the Accusative with a Preposition?

J. Because Verbs of giving, restoring, comparing and trusting govern a Dative Case, as

*I believe you.*

*Thou canst never believe him.*

*If the longest Life should be compared to Eternity it is short.*

*I thank you that you have restored me the Book which I lent you.*

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. *Much good may this Draught do you.*

*ad*, *ante*, *con*, *de*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *pro*, *sub*, *super*, *ut*

*Huic satisfacisti.*

*Convixit nobis.*

*Impedit omnibus periculum.*

*Ille huic negotio non interfuit.*

*Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefert.*

*Tu eruditione majoribus tuis præluxisti.*

M. *Veritas hoc Latine, &c.*

J. *Frater expectandus est mihi* (non) *oportet me expectare*, *Quia* *Dativum regunt Adjectiva in us & bilis.* Participiis etiam futuri temporis (additio verbo est) eleganter utimur pro *debere* & *oportere*, *ut*

*O mihi post nullos Juli memorande sodales.*

*Nulli penetrabilis astro lucus erat.*

M. *Quomodo dicitur Latine?*

J. *Quid de quoque viro & cui dicas sæpe caveto.*

M. *Quare non ad quem dicas?*

J. *Quia verba dandi, reddendi, comparandi & fidendi regunt Dativum, ut*

*Credo tibi.*

*Ei nunquam fidas.*

*Si vita longissima æternitati comparatur brevis est.*

*Gratias tibi ago ut reddideris mihi librum quem accommodabam tibi.*

M. *Veritas hoc Latine.*

J. *Faxit Deus ut hæc potio sit tibi saluti.*

M.  
after  
J.  
ed to  
nifies  
or di  
Yon  
glad  
Th  
I a  
W  
other

M.  
ness  
J.  
verbs  
most  
Case  
Be  
mark  
A  
never

Tr  
liar  
Pride  
Ta  
mit  
M  
or ma  
eye to  
M  
teach  
know  
after  
J.  
activ  
putti  
quire  
of th  
thing  
I v  
ners.  
W  
thing



M. Why hath *fit* two Datives after it?

J. Two Dative Cases are added to some certain Verbs, one signifies the person, the other *profit* or *disprofit*, as

*You are welcome, or, I am mighty glad you are come.*

*This thing woundeth thy Credit.*

*I am come to help you.*

*What thou imputeſt a Vice to others, don't thou account a praise.*

Accusative Case.

M. Why do you say, *Slothfulness breeds forgetfulness* (not)?

J. Every verb active, and verbs signifying actively, for the most part govern an Accusative Case, as

*Beware of those whom Nature has mark'd.*

*A Wolf changeth his Hair, but never his Wolfish Mind.*

*Truth produceth Hatred; Familiarity Contempt, and Prosperity Pride.*

*Take care of the present, and commit the future to the Lord.*

*Mend what is past, wisely govern or manage the present, and have an eye to the future.*

M. Why do you say, I will teach you all those things you know not, with two Accusatives after *docebo*.

J. There are some certain active verbs of teaching, naming, putting on, and the like, which require two Accusative Cases, one of the person, the other of the thing, as,

*I will unteach you those manners.*

*Why hast thou conceal'd this thing from me?*

M. Quare habet *fit* duplicem Dativum?

J. Gemini Dativi adduntur quibusdam verbis, alter personam alter commodum aut incommodum significat, ut

*Adventus tuus est mihi magnæ voluptati.*

*Hoc cedit tibi Honori.*

*Venio tibi auxilio.*

*Quod aliis vitio vertis, id tu ne laudi duxeris.*

Accusativus.

M. Quare dicis, *desidia generat oblivionem* (non) *oblivio*?

J. Verba activa omnia & active significantia fere accusativum regunt, ut,

*Cave quos Natura signavit.*

*Lupus pilum mutat, non mentem.*

*Veritas odeum, Familiaritas contemptum. & Felicitas superbiam parit.*

*Tu præsens cura, Domino committe futura.*

*Corrige præteritum, rege præsens, cerne futurum.*

M. Quare dicis, *docebo te omnia quæ nescis cum duplici accusativo*?

J. Certa sunt quædam activa docendi, nominandi, vestiendi & similia, quæ duo accusativos adsciscunt; unum personæ alterum rei, ut,

*Dedocebo te istos mores.*

*Cur cælasti me hanc rem?*

I understand that you were the most grateful of them all.

I affirm that thou art blessed.

I wish and advise thee that thing.

He put on his Shoes.

M. Why do you say, *A Lyar* bad need of a good Memory?

J. The Impersonal Verbs, &c. *it becometh, it is unseemly, it delighteth, it helpeth, it becometh, require an Accusative Case with an Infinitive Mood, as,*

It becomes every Boy to obey their Parents and Masters.

It misbecomes ingenious Boys to lead such a course of life.

It doth not delight me to hear such things now.

M. Why do you say, I will go home (not)?

J. To the question *whither?* is answered by *rus, domus*, and proper names of places also without a preposition in the accusative case, of whatsoever Declension or Number they be, as,

I am returning home. I am a returning into the Country. I am a going to *London*. Go ye Home. He is a going to *Rome*.

Whither do you go unto?

I am going onwards towards *London*.

He carries Coles to *Newcastle*.

M. Why do you say, He is tied or ready to study, (not)?

J. Thirty Prepositions do add an Accusative Case both to *Nouns* and *Verbs*.

A Privilege is granted for some Service or Duty done.

*Accusative and Ablative.*

M. Why do you say under the water indifferently, &c.?

Cognovi te gratissimum omnium.

Prædico te beatum.

Illud te oro & hortor.

Induit se calceos.

M. Quare dicis *Mendacem oportet esse memorem?*

J. Impersonalia *debet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, oportet* accusativum adsciscunt cum Infinitivo, ut

Omnem puerum decet obedire suis parentibus & præceptoribus. Ingenuos pueros dedecet ita vivere.

Non juvat me talia jam audire.

M. Quare dicis *ibo domum* (non) *ad domum*, neque *domo*.

J. Ad questionem *Quo?* respondetur *rus, Domus* et propria etiam Nomina locorum absque præpositione per accusativum cujuscunque Declinationis vel Numeri sint, ut,

Redeo domum — rus  
Eo *Londinum*. Ite *Domum*.  
Profectus est *Romam*.

Quoquo tendis?

Proficiscor *Londinum*.

Noctuas *Athēnas* portat.

M. Quare aptus ad studia est (non) aptus est studiis?

J. Triginta Præpositiones et Nominibus et Verbis addunt accusativum, ut

Beneficium datur propter officium.

*Accusativus & Ablativus.*

M. Quare dicis *subter aquas*, vel *aquis* promiscue?

Five Prepositions promiscuously add either an *Accusative*, or an *Ablative Case*, both to Nouns and Verbs, as,

*Wicked acts often returned against his Master.*

*Be little in thine own esteem that thou mayst be great in God's.*

*No body sees the Sun for 6 months together under the Arctick Pole.*

*This Bird placed himself upon the Tree. She sate on the Tree.*

M. Which is the Rule, a stick 3 feet long, &c.

J. Nouns which signifie the measure of magnitude in length, breadth, depth, or the distance or space of a place are joined to verbs either by an *accusative* or *ablative case*, as, *he was absent the space of an acre of ground.*

*He is two days journey from it.*

*I never stirr'd a foot from it.*

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. *We have been in the Garden this two hours*, &c. because to the question *how long?* is answered by a noun of time, either in the *accusative* or *ablative case*, as,

*How long have you been here?*  
*We have been in the School this two hours.*

*Hold on in your Journey both night and day.*

*I sat up late at night.*

*I lived twenty Years at London.*

*He lived 29 Years. He reigned 3 Years, 10 Months and 8 Days.*

#### *Ablative Case.*

M. Why do you say, *Keep your hands off from others Moneys.*

J. Thirteen Prepositions add an *ablative case* both to Nouns and Verbs, as,

J. *Quinque Præpositiones et nominibus et verbis promiscue addunt Accusativum vel Ablativum, ut*

*Sæpe in magistrum scelera redeunt suum.*

*Esse parvus in oculis tuis, ut sis magnus in oculis Dei.*

*Sub Arctico vertice nemo sex mensibus videt Solem.*

*Hæc avis collocabat se super arborem. Super arbore sedet.*

M. *Quænam est regula, Bacculus tres pedes longas, vel tribus*, &c.

J. *Quæ mensuram magnitudinis aut spacium loci significant, accusativo vel ablativo verbis junguntur, ut*

*Spacium unius iugeris absuit.*

*Biduo spacio abest ab eo.*

*Nusquam a se pedem decessit.*

M. *Veritas hoc Latine*, &c.

J. *Fuimus horto duas horas, vel duabus horis. Quia ad quæstionem Quamdiu? respondetur per nomen temporis in accusativo vel ablativo, ut,*

*Quamdiu hoc loco fuistis?*

*Duas horas fuimus in Scholâ.*

*Continuato itinere diem & noctem.*

*Vigilavi ad multam noctem.*

*Vixi Londini viginti annos.*

*Vixit annis viginti novem.*

*Imperavit triennio decem mensibus, diebusque octo.*

#### *Ablativus.*

M. *Quare dicis, abstineas manus ab alienis pecuniis?*

J. *Tredecim Præpositiones & Nominibus et Verbis addunt ablativum, ut,*



*Evil shall never depart from the House of the unthankful person.*

*A man may be known by his companion, who at the same time knows not himself.*

*Nothing is to be done with God out of Christ.*

*He is thankful for a benefit.*

*They are cast down from their place. He drew his Sword.*

M. Why do you say, I am weary with running?

J. The Ablative of the cause why, of the Instrument whereby, and of the manner how any thing is done, for the most part is subjoined to Adjectives and Verbs, as,

High things do fall by vices; the meanest rise by vertue.

I am weary with crying.

I saw it with these eyes.

He struck him with a Sword.

Patience can rejoice in affliction. The life of mortals is spent in hoping well and receiving evil.

Time passeth away with a swift foot.

Continual dropping wears a hole in a stone, not by the force thereof, but by often falling.

And so Man becomes learned, not by force, but by often reading.

M. What Case doth *Utor* govern?

J. *Creor*, I am created, &c. I esteem, I enjoy, I associate, I am glad, I endeavour. I pursue, I eat, I use, I buy, I impart, I rejoice, I deal, I change, I count, I hinder, I stand, I surcease, I live, and *victito* to live by feeding, require an ablative case, as

We cannot well make use of our soul when the body is fill'd with Meat and Drink.

*Non recedet malum à domo ingrati.*

*Noscitur ex socio qui non cognoscitur ex se.*

*Nihil agendum est Deo excluso Christo.*

*Gratus pro beneficio.*

*Dejecti sunt loco.*

*Ille Gladium e vagina eduxit.*

M. Quare dicis, Fessus sum cursu?

J. Ablativus causæ instrumenti et modi actionis, plerisque adjectivis et verbis subjicitur, ut

*Alta cadunt vitiis, virtutibus infima surgunt.*

*Plorando defessus sum.*

*Hisce oculis egomet vidi.*

*Ferit illum Gladio.*

*Gaudeat patientia duris.*

*Bene sperando, et male habendo consumitur vita mortalium.*

*Cito pede præterit ætas.*

*Guta cavet lapidem, non vi, sed sæpe cadendo.*

*Sic studium crescit non vi, sed sæpe legendo.*

M. Quem casum regit *utor*?

J. Ablativus adiscunt *creor*, *dignor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *lætor*, *nitor*, *prosequor*, *vescor*, *utor*, *consto*, *communico*, *gaudeo*, *impertio*, *muto*, *numero*, *officio*, *sto*, *superfedeo*, *vivo* & *victitio*, ut

*Mente recte uti non possumus, multo cibo et potu completi.*

I do,

I do or am a doing my duty.

I have company.

I feed on milk,cheese and flesh.

That a bad Man can rejoyce at anothers misfortune.

Now truely, I dont think my self worthy of such honour.

M. Why do you say, thou art more worthy of all commendation and honour than he (not), &c.

J. Captus deceived, &c. dear price, content, troubled, worthy, unworthy, relying upon, endued, banished, bound or sold, and vilis cheap govern an Ablative Case as ;

This thing is not fit to be spoken. that which is dishonest to be done, is foul to be spoken.

Thy Brother is endued with an excellent wit.

What a Man wants not is dear of 3 farthings.

Moles being blind have dig'd their dens. My Father is now very well.

I am content with a little.

This Book is sold for three Shillings. It is cheap of 13 s 2 d 6.

M. Which is the Rule the King coming the Enemies fled.

J. Two Ablative Cases put absolutely in a Sentence may be construed by the Particles, &c. when, whilst, that, after that, if the Participle be resolved into a Verb, and the Substantive into a Nominative to direct it as ; Christ was born Augustus ruling i. e. whilst that he reigned.

Christ was crucified Tyberus being Emperour. Now when Mary heard that Christ came, she ran to meet him.

M. Thou art more learned than my Brother, or a better Scholar ?

Fungor officio meo.

Fruor præsentibus.

Vescor lacte caseo carne.

Ut malus gaudeat alienis.

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.

M. Quare dicis, tu dignior es omnilaude & honore quam ille ( non ) laudis, honoris ?

J. Captus, carus, contentus, affectus, dignus, indignus, frater, præditus, extorris venalis & vilis regunt Ablativum ut ;

Hæc res est indigna relatu. Quod factu factum est ; & turpe dictu.

Frater tuus præditus est excellenti ingenio.

Quod non opus est asse carum est.

Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ. Pater meus jam affectus & est optima valitudine.

Ego parvo sum contentus.

Hic liber venalis est tribus solidis. Vilis viginti minis est.

M. Quenam est regula Rege veniente hostes fugere.

J. Duo Ablativi in oratione absolute ponuntur per particulas cum, dum, postquam exponi possunt ut ;

Imperante Augusto natus est Christus i. e. dum Augustus Imperavit.

Imperante Tyberio crucifixus. jam audito Maria Christum venisse cucurrit.

M. Tutu es doctior meo fratre (non) quam meus frater quare ?

J. Com-

J. Comparatives, which may be construed by *quam* than, govern an Ablative Case without *quam* as ;

*This Wine is better than that, nothing is more beautiful than Vertue.*

*Nothing more gallant than Wisdom.*

*Nothing can be devised to be more blessed than a quiet Conscience.*

*Better an honest death than a base life.*

*Silver is more base than Gold, and Gold than Vertues.*

M. Turn this into Latine ?

*I will come again by one a clock, because to the question when ?*

J. Is answered by a Noun of time in the Ablative Case as ; *when was that done ? It was done this year, last month. This week. Yesterday, very lately, when I had read your Letters.*

*See you are here at 3 a clock.*

*It happened twice in 12 hours time.*

M. Which is the rule ? Not only to have been at, but to have lived at Jerusalem is to be praised.

J. To the question where ? Is answered by *Domus, rus*, and proper Names of Places by an Ablative Case, provided they be of the 3 Declension and plural Number only as ; where do you live now ? At *Venice*, at *Jerusalem*, at *Athens*, at *Gades*.

M. I am come out of the Country. Why *ruri* ?

J. To the question from whence ? Is answered by the Ablative with a Preposition of proper Names of Places and Appellatives as ; from whence come

Comparativa quæ construuntur per *quam* Ablativum regunt ut ;

*Hoc vinum est melius illo.*

*Nihil est virtute formosius.*

*Nihil sapientiâ pulchrius.*

*Tranquillâ conscientiâ nihil beatius excogitari potest.*

*Honestâ mors turpi vitâ potior. vilis argentum est auro & virtutibus aurum.*

M. *Veritas* hoc Latine, &c ?

*Primâ horâ redibo.* M. Quâ regula ?

J. Ad quæstionem *Quando* ? Respondetur per nomen temporis in Ablativo ut ; *Quando id factum ? Hoc anno. Superiori mense. Hâc Septimanâ. Hesternâ die his proximis diebus. Lætis tuis epistolis.*

*Vide ut horâ tertiâ adsis.*

*Bis accidit duodecim horarum Spacio.*

M. Quænam est regula ? *Non Hierosolymis fuisse sed vixisse bene laudandum est.*

J. Ad quæstionem *ubi* ? Respondetur *domus rus*, & propria nomina locorum *tertiâ Declinationis* & Pluralia tantum per Ablativum ut ;

*Ubi num vivis ? Venetiis. Hierosolymis, Athænis, Gadibus.*

M. *Venio ex ruri* quare ?

J. Ad quæstionem *unde* ? Respondetur propria nomina locorum & Appellativa per Ablativum cum præpositione ; ut, unde venis ? à domo, you

you ?  
out  
Cham  
thage.

M.  
mend  
those

J.  
Ablat

as,  
of eve

Slo  
coura

But

to a  
things

desire

M,  
of the

J. A  
elegan

with

Dativ

or Ma

He

cers o

He

bearer

He

men.

The T

M.

audian

J. D

secund

singula

Deum,

N.

Diorun

Diis v

M.

J. D

& me



you? from home. From *Londón*, out of the Country, Garden, Chamber, from the City *Carthage*.

*Ablative and Dative.*

M. Why do you say, he is commended of these, and blamed of those (not)?

J. Passive Verbs govern an *Ablative Case* with a *Præposition*, as, He is worthy to be beloved of every one.

Slothful Boys are quickly discouraged from Learning.

But sometimes it is turned into a *Dative Case*, as, Honest things, not hidden things, are desired of good men:

M. Why do you say, he is one of the King's Council (not)?

J. An Officer or Magistrate is elegantly put in the *Ablative Case* with the *Præposition a*, and a *Dative* of the Possessor, Owner or Master. as,

He is one of the King's Officers of Excise or Custom.

He is one of the King's Cup-bearers.

He is one of the King's Footmen.

*The Use we are to make of the foregoing Rules.*

M. Dii non omnia uni dedere audiamus praxin hujus sententiæ?

J. Dij est nomen substantivum secundæ Declinationis. Numero singulari. Deus, Deus, Dei, Deo, Deum, Deo. Numero Plurali,

N. *Dei* *Dij* vel *Divi*. Deorum, Diorum vel Divorum. Deis, Diis vel Divis, &c.

M. Quare *vocativo* Deus?

J. Deus habet *vocativo* Deus, & meus masculino mi.

ex *Londino*, ex ruri, ex horto, è cubiculo, à *Carthagine*.

*Ablativus & Dativus.*

M. Quare dicis, Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis (non) *horum illorum*.

J. Passiva verba cum *Præpositione* regunt *ablativum*, ut Deligendus est ab omnibus.

Ignavi à discendo cito deterentur.

Sed aliquando vertitur in *Dativum*, ut

Honesti bonis viris non occulta petuntur.

M. Quare dicis, Est Regi a Consiliis (non) est Senator Regis?

J. Magistratus elegantur *ablativo* ponitur cum *præpositione à*; & *Dativo* possessoris sive Magistri, ut,

Est Regi à Publicanis.

Est Regi à Poculis.

Est Regi à Pedibus.

*Praxis de regulis antecedentibus.*

M. Cujus Generis?

J. Est masculini generis, quia in *us*, secundæ et quartæ inflectionis masculina sunt.

M. Dij cujus casus?

J. Est nominandi casus pluralis numeri, & præcedit verbum Dedere, quia Nominativus præcedit verbum personale finitum simili numero et personâ. Non est adverbium. Dedere est verbum

R activum.

activum primæ conjugationis, do, dedi, datum.

J. Quare dedi in perfecto et datum in supino?

J. Viginti duo verba primæ conjugationis Perfectum et Supinum irregulariter formant, ubi do habet dedi et datum.

M. Cujus Modi et Temporis?

J. Est Indicativi Modi perfecti temporis pluralis, numeri et tertiæ personæ, sic ejus rectus Dii.

Quia verbum personalæ cohæret cum Nominativo numero et personâ.

Omnia est nomen adjectivum duarum terminationum. Numero singulari, *omnis et omne; omnis et omne; omnis omni; omnem et omne; omni* Numero plurali, *omnes & omnia; omnes & omnia; omnium, omnibus, omnes & omnia, omnibus.*

M. Quare omnis & omne?

J. Adjectiva in *is*, et comparativa Nominativo duas habent voces prima masculini et feminini et altera neutrius generis est.

M. Quare vocativo omnis & omne?

J. Quia *vocativus* similis est *nominativo*; et *ablativus* pluralis etiam *dativo*.

M. Cujus casus omnia?

J. Est accusandi casus pluralis numeri et sequitur verbum dedere. Quia verba activa *omnia*, et active significantia fere accusativum regunt.

M. Uni cujus partis orationis?

J. Est nomen adjectivum trium terminationum.

Numero singulari, *unus, una, unum; ut: una, unum; unius, uni; unum, unam, unum; uno, una, uno; caret Plurali.*

M. Quare unus, una, unum?

J. Quare adjectiva in *r* & *us* Nominativo tres habent voces prima masculini secunda feminini et ultima neutrius generis est.

M. Quare vocativo, *une, una, unum?*

J. *Ab us* secundæ Declinationis fit *vocativus* in *e*.

M. Quare caret plurali?

J. Plurali careant quibus est natura coercens, et hoc verbum loquitur de *uno* tantum.

M. Quare Genitivo *unius* et Dativo *uni*?

J. Quia alius, alter, alteruter, neuter, nullus, solus, totus et ullus, unus, uter-uterque, utervis et Pronomina ille, ipse iste, Genitivum per *ius*, et Dativum per *i*, in omni genere faciunt.

M. Uni, cujus casus?

J. Est Dandi casus singularis numeri et regitur a verbo dedere. Quia verba *dandi* & *reddendi, comparandi* & *fidendi* regunt Dativ.

Exercitium horæ primæ die Jovis pomeridiano tempore.

Ulus Exemplorum aliquot ex Regulis Syntaxeos variatione.

Exemplum primum.

Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur. Nauta peritus in tempestate cernitur. Dux fortis in prælio cernitur. Patiens rebus in adversis cernitur.

2. Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur. Vir sapit qui vera loquitur.

Vir desipit qui falsa loquitur.

Vir vanus est qui multa loquitur. Vir bonus est quis?

Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat. *Ufas.*

Magistratus bonus est quis?

Qui tuetur bonos, animadver- tit in malos. Sub-

Sub-  
magis  
venera  
Vir  
sentia  
futura  
Prud  
beros  
ad tin  
mini,  
odium  
tuit &  
nis pie  
plar pr  
Pius  
semper  
exemp  
Man  
Qui non  
utitur  
Serv  
mino su  
tanquam  
tur.  
Præc  
discipul  
erudit,  
ceptis 8  
Disci  
juxta p  
vit ei;  
præbet.  
Pastor  
ves ton  
3. Pr  
negligit  
quitur,  
cionator  
negligit  
puli ver  
4. Pa  
te. Patr  
Bacchus  
merum.  
Veneren

Subditus bonus est quis? Qui magistratum tanquam patrem veneratur et legibus pareat.

Vir sapiens est quis? qui præsentia cernit, præterita repetit, futura providet.

Prudens pater est quis? Qui liberos ab ipsis statim incunabulis ad timorem & disciplinam Domini, ad verecundiam, vitiorum odium & amorem virtutis instituit & semetipsum liberis suis omnis pietatis & castitatis exemplar præbet.

Pius filius est quis? Qui patri semper obtemperat, & vitæ ejus exemplum imitatur.

Mansuetus dominus est quis? Qui non verberum sed verborum utitur castigatione erga servos.

Servus fidelis est quis? Qui domino suo simpliciter & ex animo, tanquam christo ipsi, obsequitur.

Præceptor bonus est quis? Qui discipulos fideliter ad doctrinam erudit, & ad pietatem crebris præceptis & exemplo format.

Discipulus bonus est quis? Qui juxta præscriptum præceptoris vivit ei; se attentem & assiduum præbet.

Pastor bonus est quis? Qui oves tondet, non deglubit.

3. Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis. Hypodidasclus loquitur, vos vero negligitis. Concionator clamat populus vero negligit. Præceptor docet discipuli vero negligunt.

4. Pater & Præceptor accersunt te. Patruus & amita accersunt te, Bacchus & Apollo accersunt Homerum. Ceres & Bacchus accersunt Venerem.

5: Multum scire vita est jucundissima. Multum discere est vita jucundissima. Multum audire est vita jucundissima. Multum legere est vita jucundissima.

6. Facundia Ciceronis. Eloquentia Demosthenis. Doctrina Ciceronis. Amator Studiorum. Amator virtutum. Amator voluptatis. Amator somni & ignavia.

7. Cicero Oratorum eloquentissimus. Virgilius Poetarum Optimus. Cicero Oratorum Præstantissimus. Achilles Græcorum fortissimus. Crassus Romanorum Ditissimus.

Aristoteles Philosophorum optimus.

Trajanus Imperatorum augustissimus.

Paracelsus Medicorum peritissimus.

Phalaris tyrannorum crudelissimus. Mæcenus patronorum beneficissimus.

Saturnus Deorum antiquissimus.

Ulißes Græcorum dolosissimus. Cato senatorum severissimus.

Stentor præconum clamoribus.

8. Postpono famæ pecuniam.

Postponit virtutibus aurum.

Postponit sapientiæ divitias.

Postponit vitæ famam.

Postponit conscientiae vitam.

Postponit æquitati injuriam.

Postponit fortitudini ignaviam.

Postponit eruditioni sanitatem.

Postponit oratori Poetam.

Postponit virgilio Homerum.

Postponit doctrinæ voluptatem.

Postponit Minervæ Dianam.

Postponit Veneri Junonem.

9. Pudor pavi penditur.

Bonitas parvi penditur.



Virtus parvi penditur,

Philosophi parvi penduntur.

10. Nihili vel pro nihilo habentur literæ. Nihili vel pro nihilo habentur literarum studiosi.

Nihili vel pro nihilo habetur Homerus. Et virgilius.

11. Deus est summum bonum. Divitiæ sunt summum bonum avari. Voluptas est summum bonum epicuri. Virtus est summum bonum sapientis.

12. Nunquam fera est ad bonos mores via. Nunquam fera est ad doctrinam via. Nunquam fera est ad pietatem via. Nunquam fera est ad honorem via.

13. Adolescentis est majores natu revereri. Filii est patri obtemperare. Discipuli est præceptorem revereri. Religiosi est Deum venerari.

14. Plurimi passim fit pecunia. Plurimi passim fit aurum. Plurimi passim fit adulatio. Plurimi passim fiunt divitiæ.

15. Semper obtemperat pius filius patri. Semper obtemperat honestus servus Domino. Semper obtemperat bonus discipulus præceptori. Semper obtemperat bona uxor marito.

16. Rex pius est ornamento reipublicæ. Dux fortis est patriæ ornamento. Magistratus fidelis est civitati ornamento. Dominus frugi est familiæ ornamento.

17. Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit. Christus omnes discipulos gratiâ divinâ explevit. Socrates omnes discipulos sapientiâ explevit. Epicurus omnes sectatores voluptatibus explevit.

18. Qui adipisci veram gloriam volunt, justitiæ fungantur officiis. Qui adipisci veram gloriam

volunt, charitatis fungantur officiis. Qui adipisci verum honorem vult, pietatis fungatur officiis. Qui adipisci præmium virtutis vult, laboris fungatur officiis.

19. Ignavi à discendo cito deterrentur. Ignavi milites à pugnando cito deterrentur. Otiosi à labore. Stupidis à studendo cito deterrentur.

20. Vigilandum est ei qui cupit vincere. Serendum est ei qui cupit metere. Laborandum est ei qui cupit edere. Pugnandum est ei qui cupit vincere.

21. Samia mihi mater fuit, ea habitabat Rhodi. Maria mihi soror erat, ea habitabat Londini. Elizabetha mihi matertera erat, ea habitabat Eboraci. Anna mihi avia erat, ea habitabat Brannonii.

22. Concessi Cantabrigiam ad Capiendum ingenii cultum. Concessi Colcestriam ad edendas offereas. Patruus concessit Oxonium ad emendas chirothecas. Atheus Amsterodamum concessit ad eligendam religionem.

23. Interest magistratûs tueri bonos, & animadvertere in malos. Interest Domini bonis servis indulgere, & animadvertere in malos. Interest præceptoris studiosos fovere, otiosos castigare. Interest pastoris tueri oves, lupos arcere.

24. Uxorûm ædes curare decet. Nauclerum navem curare decet. Ducem exercitum curare decet. Ludimagistrum Scholam curare decet. Et cætera per singulas regulas syntaxeos cum variationibus,

Sententiæ

Sententiæ Variatio.

Cicero est omnium oratorum eloquentissimus.

Nom. Cicero à nullo oratore superatur eloquentiâ.

Voc. Quam singulari, O Cicero, ornatus à Deo eloquentiâ.

Gen. Summa est Ciceronis præ aliis Oratoribus eloquentiâ.

Dat. Haud scio an quisquam Ciceroni sit æquandus eloquentiâ.

Accu. Putasne Ciceronem ulli Oratori cedere eloquentiâ.

Abl. Nemo oratorum Cicerone fuit eloquentior.

Nom. Sint alii Oratores eloquentes; at qui cum Cicerone comparari possit nullus est.

Voca. Heus Oratores! Cicero excellit vos eloquentiâ.

Gen. Cicero est facile princeps omnium oratorum.

Dat. Cicero palmam eloquentiæ præripuit aliis oratoribus.

Accu. Cicero omnes oratores superat eloquentiâ.

Abl. Cicero ex omnibus oratoribus est eloquentissimus.

Cicero est vir bonus, dicendi peritus--- usus.

1. Cicero est & probus & eloquens. 2. Cicero est vir cum probus tum dicendi peritus. 3. Cicero est vir probus, & idem dicendi peritus. 4. Cicero est vir bonus, simul ac dicendi peritus. 5. Cicero est vir bonus, pariter & dicendi peritus. 6. Cicero est vir æquè bonus, atq; eloquens. 7. Cicero est vir perinde bonus ac dicendi peritus. 8. Cicero est vir haud secus bonus ac dicendi peritus. 9. Cicero est vir similiter bonus & dicendi peritus. 10. Cicero est vir haud dis-

similiter bonus & dicendi peritus.

11. Cicero est vir bonus juxta ac dicendi peritus. 12. Cicero vir est æque bonus ac dicendi peritus. 13. Cicero est vir non tantum bonus, sed etiam dicendi peritus. 14. Cicero est vir non modo bonus, verum etiam dicendi peritus. 15. Cicero est vir quemadmodum bonus, ita & dicendi peritus. 16. Cicero est vir tam bonus, quam dicendi peritus. 17. Cicero est vir non minus bonus, quam dicendi peritus. 18. Cicero est vir præter bonitatem etiam dicendi peritus. 19. Cicero præterquam quod est vir bonus, est etiam dicendi peritus. 20. Cicero vir est, de quo dubites, meliorne sit an dicendi peritior. 21. Cicero vir est, in quo cum bonitate dicendi peritia ex æquo certat. 22. Cicero vir est, qui bonitatem cum dicendi peritia æquavit. 23. Cicero vir est, cujus probitati respondet dicendi peritia. 24. Cicero vir est, qui parem probitatem cum dicendi peritia æquavit. 25. Cicero vir magnâ quidem dicendi peritia, verum probitate neutiquam inferior. 26. Cicero est pari probitate, & dicendi peritia. 27. Cicero vir est in dicendi peritiâ egregius, neq; sui dissimilis in moribus. 28. Cicero est vir clarus dicendi peritia, neq; non illustris insigni probitate. 29. Cicero est vir, qui dicendi peritiâ morum probitate æquiparat. 30. Cicero bonitas æquat dicendi peritiâ. 31. Cicero vir est probitate morum, dicendiq; peritiâ juxta clarus, &c.

Exercitium horæ primæ diæ verneris pomendiano tempore.

Phrases----- Describere prælectionem----- usus.

Concionem, dictatum, declamationem, Epistolam, Thema, Carmina, versionem latinam describere.

Phrasis----- Hesterno die occupatus fui----- usus.

Pridie hujus diei, heri, hodierno die, proximâ elapsâ septimanâ, die Lunæ, die martis, die mercurii, die die jovis, die veneris, die Saturni, die Dominico-occupatus fui.

Phrasis----- Non ignoras me lentius scribere---- usus.

Non ignorat----Præceptor me tardius venire. Mater me altius dormire. Pater me impensius ludere. Magister me segnius studere. Patrius me velocius currere. Amicitia me pulchrius pingere. Avunculus me procacius ridere. Matertera me sæpius edere.

Phrasis----- Ego tibi non possum dare operam----- usus.

Non potest dare operam---- Philanax Basilio. Priamusq; Hæctori. Achilles Patroclo. Mæcnas ovidio. Cicero Pompeio Pater filio. Præceptor discipulo. Uxor marito. Ulysses Penelope, &c. Ego fratri non possum dare operam.

Phrasis----- Summâ virtute, & singulari humanitate---- usus.

Aneas vir summâ virtute, & singulari pietate.

Erasmus vir summâ doctrinâ & singulari judicio.

Cicero vir summo ingenio, & singulari eloquentiâ.

Virgilius poeta summâ eruditione, & singulari poetices facultate.

Phrasis----- Graviore sum dolore affectus nostrâ factum esse negligentia---- usus.

Graviore angore affectus sum, nostra factum esse incucia.

Majori tristitiâ affectus sum, nostra factum esse incogitantia.

Molestiore axietate affectus sum, nostra factum esse imprudentia.

Tristiori luxu affectus sum, nostra factum esse præcipitantia.

Phrasis----- Longè alia in fortuna esse atq; ejus pietas ac dignitas postulabat.

Usus.

Penelope longè alio in statu fuit, atq; ejus castitas ac constantia postulabat.

Regulus longè aliâ in conditione fuit atq; ejus fides ac magnanimitas merebatur.

Aristides longè aliâ apud Athenienses in ratione fuit atq; ejus justitia ac veritas flagitabat.

Cicero longè alio in casu fuit, atq; ejus fidelitas ac eloquentia poscebat.

Phrasis----- Nobis erat in animo filium ad Cæsarem mittere ----- usus.

Ciceroni erat in animo, filium ad Cratippum mittere.

Patri erat in animo, famulum ad Augustum mittere.

Mæcenati erat in animo, virgilium ad Cæsarem mittere.

Penelope erat in animo, Telemacum ad Ulysssem mittere, &c.



Of the Figures belonging to Syntax.

M. How many figures belong to Syntax.

J. Four, *Pleonasme*, *Syllepsis*, *Hyperbaton* and *Ellepsis*.

*Pleonasme* is when there is a word in a sentence more than needs as; *I have heard it with these Ears. I have seen it with these Eyes. I have spoken it with this Mouth.* *Syllepsis* or *Syntbesis* is when there is an agreement in Sence but not in Words: Or it is the comprehension of the unworthy under the more worthy as; *both you and the Boy were: The King and the Queen are blessed.* *Hyperbaton*, is when the Latines imitate a Greek construction, or change the order of words as; *me-cum* for *cum me* with me. *Things set on fire above these: Ellepsis* is when any Word is left out in a Sentence that ought to be there to compleat the Sence. The thing moveable is made substantial. Whereas if it be fixed you may understand it as; *They say it is not in paying. What things more, what those men.*

Of Profodie.

Whar is Profodie?

*Profodie* is the last Part of Grammar, which teacheth how to make Verses well.

M. How many things are to be observed in Profodie?

J. In Profodie two things are especially to be observed.

De Syntaxis Figuris.

M. Quot figuræ spectant Syntaxi.

J. Quatuor, *Pleonasmus*, *Syllepsis*, *Hyperbaton* & *Ellepsis*.

*Vocibus exsuperat Pleonasmus & emphasin Auget ut.*

*Auribus his audiui, oculis videre locutus.*

*Personam, & Genus, numerum conceptio triplex.*

*Accipet indignum syllepsis sub imagine digno ut.*

*Tuq; puerq; eritis.*

*Rex & regina beati.*

*Est vatum inter se turbatus Hyperbaton ordo ut.*

*Mecum pro cum me.*

*His accensa super pro super bis.*

*Dicitur Ellepsis si ad sensum dictio desit.*

*Mobile fit fixum; si fixum merite subaudis ut.*

*Non est solvendo dicunt.*

*Quid plura; quid istis.*

De Profodia.

Quid est Profodia?

*Profodia est ultima pars Grammaticæ quæ Carmina recte Componere docet.*

M. In Profodia quot sunt notanda.

J. In Profodia duo potissimum, sunt consideranda, viz.

Namely

Namely the quantity of Syllables, and the way to make Verse.

M. The quantity of Syllables is already sufficiently taught in the first Part of Grammer, but of what quantity is the last Syllable of every verse?

J. The last Syllable of every verse is accounted common.

### Of Feet.

M. At last then concerning the method of making verse, whereof doth verse consist?

J. Verse is made up of Feet.

M. And what is a Foot made of?

J. Feet are made of Syllables disposed in a just or right order.

M. What is a Foot?

J. A Foot is the setting or placing together of two Syllables or more according to the certain observation of the quantities.

M. How many fold is a Foot?

J. Fourfold, a Spondee, a Trochee, Iambick and a Dactyl.

M. How is a Spondee known?

J. A Spondee consisteth of two long Syllables as; virtus ver-tue.

M. How is a Trochee known?

J. A Trochee consisteth of a long Syllable first and a short one after it.

M. What is an Iambick Foot?

J. An Iambick consists of a short Syllable first and a long one after.

M. What is a Dactyl Foot?

Syllabarum quantitas & Ratio constituendi carminis.

M. Quantitas Syllabarum jam primâ parte Grammaticæ plene tractatur; sed cujus quantitatis est ultima Syllaba cujuslibet versûs.

J. Ultima Syllaba cujusq; versûs communis habetur.

### De Pedibus.

M. Tandem igitur de ratione constituendi carminis, unde componitur carmen?

J. Carmen ex pedibus est compositum.

M. Unde Componitur pes?

J. Ex Syllabis justo ordine dispositis fiunt pedes.

M. Quid est pes?

J. Pes est duarum Syllabarum pluriumve constitutio ex certa temporum observatione.

M. Quotuplex est Pes?

J. Quadruplex est, Spondæus Trochæus, Iambus, Dactylus.

M. Unde dignoscitur Spondæus?

J. Spondæus ex duabus Syllabis longis constat ut; virtus.

M. Unde dignoscitur Trochæus?

J. Trochæus ex longâ & brevi constat ut; Collē.

M. Quid est Iambus?

J. Iambus ex brevi & longâ constat ut; amans.

M. Quid est Dactylus?

J. A *Dactyl* consisteth of three long syllables, the first is long the other two are short as ; mītrē to send.

Of Verse and the Figures which belong to scanning them.

M. What is a Verse ?

J. Feet being disposed in a just order do make a verse. Verse then is a Speech bound to a just and lawful number of Feet.

M. How many kinds of verse ?

J. Seven *Hexameter* or *Heroick*.

*Pentameter* or *Elegiack*.

*Phaleucick* or of eleven syllables.

An *Asclepiade* verse.

A *Sapphick* verse.

An *Adonick* verse. And

An *Iambick* verse.

M. What is an *Hexameter* verse.

J. An *Hexameter* consisteth of six Feet in number, but of two Feet only in kind a *Dactyl* and a *Spondee*.

The fifth place claims properly a *Dactyl* to it self.

The sixth place claims a *Spondee*, the rest this Foot or that even as we please.

M. Give an Example of an *Heroick* or *Hexameter* verse ?

J. Shall he now take the best things, who here-to-fore would not take any at all.

M. What belongs to this verse ?

J. To verses belong scanning or measuring,

*Dactylus* ex tribus constat syllabis, prima longa reliquis duabus brevibus ut ; mītrē.

De Carmine & Figuris scansioni accidentibus

M. Quid est carmen ?

J. Pedes justa ordine dispositi carmen constituunt. Carmen est igitur oratio justo & legitimo pedum numero constricta.

M. Quot sunt genera Carminum.

J. Septem *Hexametrum* i. e. *Heroicum*.

*Pentametrum* i. e. *Elegiacum*.

*Phaleucium* i. e. *Hendecasyllabum*.

*Asclepiadum*.

*Sapphicum*.

*Adonicum* &.

*Iambicum*.

M. Quid est Carmen *Hexametrum*.

J. *Hexametrum* constat ex pedibus quidem numero Sex Genere verò Duobus *Dactylo* & *Spondeo*.

Quintus locus *Dactylum*.

Sextus *Spondaum* peculiariter sibi vindicat sed reliqui hunc vel illum prout volumus.

M. Redde Exemplum carminis *Hexametri* ?

J. Optima nunc fumat, qui fumere noluit ulla.

M. Quid accidit huic carmini ?

J. Carminibus accidit commensuratio sive scanfio ?

S

M. What



### **M. What is Scanning ?**

**J. Scanning** is the lawful measuring of a Verse into every one or each of the Feet.

M. How many things belong to the scanning of a verse.

J. Six Figures belong to scan-  
sion *Synalapha*, *Ecliphis*, *Synaresis*,  
*Diarefis*, *Systole* and *Diastole*.

*Eclipsis* takes away the letter *m*, with its precedent vowel at the end of a word. *Synaleph-a* cuts of one vowel before another.

Thou art so far from me, O  
strange! here am I banished from  
thee; and seeing it is so do thou  
love me thereabout, as I love thee  
here.

Which by the Order of Scan-  
sion is to be read by Synalæpha and  
Eclipsis, &c.

Synæresis is the contraction of two Syllables into one as.

Æripides for Aeripides, Alveo  
for Alvo, &c.

Diæresis parteth a Syllable and of it maketh two Syllables as; *Evoluisse* for *Evolvisset*, *Ahæneus* for *Ahnenus*, *Evohe* for *Eve*, &c.

Systole makes a long Syllable short, Dyastole maketh a short Syllable long and these Figures are often used *Carminis gratia a libertate Poets take.*

M. Lets hear the Scansion, of  
the said Hexameter verse.

J. 1. Is a Daetyl. 2. a Spondee. 3. Spondee. 4. Daetyl. 5. a Daetylo. 6. a Spondee.



M. What sort of Verse is this?

M. Quid est *Scansio*?

J. Scansio est legitima carminis  
in singulos pedes commensuratio.

M. Quot accidunt Scanfioni ?

J. Sex Figuræ accidunt Scanfioni *Synalapha, Eclipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, Systole, & Diastole.*

*Ecthlipsis m. vocales aufert Syn-*  
*lapha ut ;*

*Tu in me ita es, bem! in te ut  
ego sum: ac tu me ibi ama ut te e-  
go amo hic jam.*

Ordine Scanfionis legitur per  
Synalæpham & Ethlipfin. Tinmi-  
tes hemtute gofac tumiba muttego  
miciam.

Syllaba de binis confecta Synæ-  
refis esto ut.

*Aripides*, alveo, cui, tenuis parietis, aurea.

Dividit in binas partita *Diere-*  
*sis* unam ut ;

*Evoluisse*, *Áhænēus*, *Evohe* ma-  
teriai.

Systole ducta rapit, Correpta  
Dia stole ducit ut.

Recidimūs, steterunt.  
Naufragia, semisopita.

M. Audiamus Scanlonem Car-  
minis Hexametri?

J. Optimă. 2. Nune fă. 3. măt-  
quî. 4. Sămăre. 5. Nôlăit. 6. ūl-  
lă.

M. Quale est hoc Carmen?

J. I.

J. It is an Hexameter verse because it consisteth just of six Feet in number.

M. What kind of Foot is *ōptimā*?

J. It is a *Dačtyl* because it consists of three Syllables, the first long and the other two short.

M. Why is *o* long in *optima*?

J. Because one Vowel before two Consonants, or before a double one is every where long by position (*tī*) is short by use or authority of Authors (*mā*) is also short by an Exception from a final in the first Part of Grammar.

*Nūnc sū* is a *Spondeē* because, &c. (*u*) in *nunc* is long by position (*su*) is long because (*u*) final is always long.

*Mātquī* is also a *Spondeē* because (*a*) is long by position.

(*i*) Final are long.

*Sumere* is a *Dačtyl* Foot.

(*u*) Is long by authority.

(*me*) *e* Before *r* of the third Conjugation is short.

(*rē*) *b*, *d*, *t*, and *e* final are short as; *mare* the sea.

*Noluit* is a *Dačtyl* also.

(*o*) By authority is long.

(*u*) Short, one Vowel before another in several Syllables of the same word is every where short.

(*it*) *b*, *d*, *t*, Final are short.

*Ullā* is a *Spondeē* because, &c.

(*u*) Is long by position.

(*a*) Finals in *a* are long, &c.

M. What is a *Pentameter* verse?

J. A *Pentameter* consisteth of two *Dačtyls*, or two *Spondees* with a long Syllable, afterwards of two *Dačtyls* with another long

J. Est *Carmen Hexametrum* quia constat ex pedibus quidem numero sex, &c.

M. Qualis pes est *ōptimā*?

J. Est *Dačtylus* quia ex tribus constat Syllabis, prima longa reliquis duabus brevibus.

M. (*o*) Quare producitur?

J. Quia vocalis ante duas Consonantes aut duplicem ubiq; positura longum est.

(*tī*) Corripitur usu & autoritate (*mā*) etiam breve, Excipienda sunt putā itā quā & omnes casus in *a*.

*Nūnc sū* est *Spondæus*. (*u*) in *nunc* positione producitur (*su*) longum quia *Finita* in (*u*) semper producant.

*Mātquī* est etiam *Spondeus*.

(*ā*) Positione producitur.

(*i*) *Finita* in *i* sunt longa.

*Sūmērē* est *Dačtylus*.

(*ū*) Longum est autoritate.

(*mē*) *e* *Tertiæ Conjugationis* ante *r* est breve.

(*rē*) *Finita* in *b*, *d*, *t*, corripunt in *e* etiam ut *marē*.

*Nōluit* est etiam *Dačtylus*.

(*o*) Autoritate producitur.

(*ū*) Vocalis ante alteram in diversis Syllabis ejusdem dictionis ubiq; brevis est.

(*it*) *Finita* in *b*, *d*, *t*, corripunt.

*Ullā* est *Spondæus*.

(*ū*) Positura producitur.

(*ā*) *Finita* in *a* producant, &c.

M. Quid est *carmen Pentametricum*.

J. *Pentametricum* constat ex duobus *Dačtylis* vel *Spondæis*; cum Syllabā longā; deinde duobus *Dačtylis* cum Syllabā longā ut;

Syllable as; Love is a thing full of  
pensive or careful Fear.

Res est solliciti plena timoris a-  
mor.



M. Measure this verse.

J. 1. A Spondee. 2. A Daçtyle.  
3. a long Syllable. 4. A Daçtyl.  
5. A Daçtyl. 6. A Long.

M. What is a Sapphick verse?

J. A Sapphick verse consists of  
a Troche, a Spondee, and a Da-  
çtyl, and of two Troches at last  
as.

Now Snow enough and terrible  
Hail in our Countrey.

M. Give me the measure here-  
of?

M. Commensura hoc Carmen?

J. 1. Rēs-ēst. 2. Sōlici. 3. Tī.  
4. Plēnāti. 5. Mōrīsā. 6. Mōr.

M. Quid est Carmen Sapphi-  
cum?

J. Sapphicum constat ex Tro-  
chæo, Spondæo, Daçtulo, & duo-  
bus demum Trochæis ut.

Jam Satis terris, nivis atq; di-  
ræ.

M. Redde Commensuratio-  
nem?



J. 1. A Trochee. 2. A Spon-  
dee. 3. A Daçtyle. 4. A Tro-  
chee. 5. A Spondee.

M. What is an Asclipiade  
verse?

J. An Asclipiade consisteth of a  
Spondee, Daçtyle and a long Syl-  
lable, afterwards of two Daçtyles  
as; O noble Mæcen-as descended  
of eminent or noble Kings.

M. Scann it?

J. 1. Jāmsā. 2. tīs. tēr. 3. Rīf-  
nivīs. 4. Atquē. 5. Dīrē.

M. Asclipiadæum quid est?

J. Asclipiadæum constat, ex  
Spondæo, Daçtulo & Syllabā lon-  
gā; duobus deinde Daçtylis ut;  
Mæcenas attavis edite regibus.

M. Commensura?



J. 1. Spondee. 2. A Daçtyle.  
3. A Long Syllable. 4. A Da-  
çtyle. 5. A Daçtyle.

M. What is the Adonick verse?

J. The Adonick consists of a  
Daçtyle and a Spondee as.

J. 1. Mēcē. 2. nās, ātā. 3.  
vis. 4. Edītē. 5. rēgībūs.

M. Quid est Carmen Adoni-  
cum?

J. Adonicum constat ex Da-  
çtulo & Spondæo ut.





O Fuscus a Man incorrupt of Life and clear of wickedness, needs not the Darts nor the Bow of the Moor, neither his quiver full of poison'd Arrows.

M. What is a Phaleucick verse?

J. The Phaleucick consists of a Spondee, a Dactyle and of three Trochees at last as; O fearful Mahilis whithsoever thou canst fly away, &c.

M. Lets hear the Scanfion?

Intēger vitæ scēlērīsq; pūrū,  
Nōn eget Maūri jaculis nec arcu,  
nec venenatis gravida sagittis.  
Fūscē phārētrā.

M. Phaleucium quid est?

J. Phaleucium constat ex Spondeo, Dactylo & tribus tandem Trochæis ut.

Quoquo diffugi-as pavens Mabili, &c.

M. Audiamus Scanfionem?



J. 1. A Spondee. 2. A Dactyl. 3. 4. 5. Trochees.

M. What is an Iambick verse?

J. Iambick is a verse which consisteth only of Iambick Feet as; Rome, her self perished by her own strength.

M. Let us examine this verse?

J. 1. Quoquo. 2. Diffugi: 3. Aspā. 4. Vēnsma. 5. Bili.

M. Quid est Carmen Iambicum?

J. Iambicum quod è solis constat Iambis ut.

Suis & ipsa Roma viribus ruit.

M. Examinemus praxin hujus Carminis?



J. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. Are all Iambicks consisting of short and long Syllables.

(su) Is short because one Vowel before another in several Syllables of the same word is always short.

M. Now I thank you with all my heart, fare you well, and God keep you in safety.

J. God be also favourable to you, you shall always have my heartiest Prayers.

J. 1. Suis. 2. etip. 3. Sārō: 4. Māvī 5. rībūs. 6. ruit.

(su) Breve est quia vocalis ante alteram in diversis Syllabis ejusdem dictionis ubiq; brevis est, &c.

M. Refero tibi grates ex animo, nunc vale, & sospitet te Deus.

J. Sit tibi Deus etiam propitius nam semper erit tibi vota mea devotissima.

*Rules for construing according to natural Order.*

**B**EFORE you Construe read the Sentence distinctly to a Period, observing, 1. Points. 2. Proper-names. 3. Words included in a Parenthesis. 4. Argument and drift of the Place. 5. Circumstances, Quis, Cui, Causa, Locus, quo Tempore, Prima, Sequela. *i. e.* who speaks in that place, what is spoken, to whom it is spoken, upon what occasion, to what end it is spoken, where it was spoken, and at what time, what went immediatly before, and what follows next after. 6. Observe the principal Verb with its nominative Case.

Then Construe, 1. vocative Case (if there be any) with its Interpretation, and whatsoever depends on it.

2. Take the nominative Case (of the principal Verb) or whatsoever is put instead of it, and joyn with it whatsoever depends on it.

3. Take the principal Verb and whatsoever depends on it.

4. Take the Case following the Verb, and after it all other Cases in order, as the Genitive, Dative, Ablative.

But Relatives and Nouns that follow the Rule of the Relative, together with their Substantives (if any be expressed) are commonly taken before the Verb, or any other Word whereof they are governed; and so are Conjunctions and Adverbs of likeness as *ut, sicut, having sic, or ita* to answer them in the second Part of the Sentence.

5. Take the Verb and Adverb together, and Substantive and Adjective together, unless the Adjective pass over its Signification unto some other Word which it governs.

6. Observe Indeclinables, and the Case (they required) following.

7. The Substantive with its Participle, which neither agrees with Verb, nor is governed of any Word, and being put in a Comma by it self is called the Ablative Case Absolute.

8. Observe that Gerunds accord to the Oblique Cases of Nouns, *di* to the Genitive, *do* to the Ablative, *dum* to the Accusative and Supines are put for Infinitive Moods.

*Summa Regula.*

1. *Diſtio regens præponenda ei quæ regitur.*

*Quæ declarant poſtponenda ſunt iis quæ declarantur.*

The word governing Construe before the word governed.

And thoſe things which declare, muſt be taken after thoſe things which are declared.

*Rules*

# Rules for placing Words according to artificial Order.

1. **O**BSEERVE that contrary to Gramatical Order of construction on words governed, commonly precede, or are placed before words governing, and in perfect Sentences, Oblique Cases are usually put in the beginning; unless they be Negatives and then they are elegantly placed at the end: And so may Adjectives, and Participles which contain the Emphasis or cheif Point of the Sence.

The Patient also must follow the Agent.

The Nominative Case must be placed in the middle before the Verb: But if a question be asked, or the Verb be of the Imperative Mood it is put after the Verb.

Adjectives usually before the Substantive, and between them place the Genitive Case of the latter two Substantives and the word governing that Genitive Case, or the Verb, Adverb, Preposition and their Cases, yet these last may be placed where they best please the Ear, tho' elegancy require them to stand before the Verb or Participle which they declare.

Both in Prose and Verse sweetly dispose long Syllables with short ones, especially in the ending of Sentences.

Always avoid Confusion of the Words of one Clause with the Words of another, with harshness of Sound and affected Curiosity; ever keeping up the best advantages of dependance, variety, distinction prespicuity and smoothness of Stile.

## Particulæ Anglicanæ in Tyronum memoriæ causa Compendium redactæ.

- [ *A. An.* ]
1. Are Signs of Nouns Substantives common, or are.
  2. Put for One and made by Unus.
  3. For Each or Every By Singulus with *in* and By *in* alone.
  4. Before a Participle in *ing*, and after a Verb of Motion by the first Supine, or a Participle in *rus*, or a Gerund in *dum*.
  5. Before a Participle in *ing* denoting Action is made by a Verb of that Tense whose sign determineth.
  6. Before words of time, and after once, twice, thrice, &c. are Signs of an Ablative Case with *in* or without it.
  7. Before words of time, having a Participle in *ing*, after them by a Verb in such Tense as the sign indicateth.

[ *Above.* ]

1. In order, height, and place by *super*, *supra*.
2. Signifying more than, longer than by, *plus amplius*, *majus*, *diutius*.

3. Sig. beyond, excelling by *ante*, *præ*, *præter*, *ultra*, *supra*.

4. Sig.



4. Sig. higher in place or dignity by prior superior.
5. After over by ad, extra, super. After from by desuper superne.
- [About.] 1. Sig. concerning by de, super, circa.
2. Sig. near upon, more or less, over or under by quasi, ad, instar plus minus, præter, propter.
3. Sig. ready by a Participle of the future in rus.
4. Before words of time by sub, circa circiter.
5. Before place and persons by circa, circum.
6. Belongs to the foregoing word and is included in the Latine Verse as; about to be futurum ut.
- [Abroad.] 1. Sig. out of doors by foris. Moving out of doors by foras.
2. Sig. afar of, or at a distance by peregrè.
3. Sig. in the open air by sub dio, sub dium.
4. Sig. in open sight by in publico, in aperto, in propatulo.
5. Sig. all abroad by passim, late. For abroad by longe lateq;
6. Sig. asunder or a part by di, dis in composition.
- [Accord.] 1. After one by sponte ultro, voluntate.
2. After with one by concorditer unamiter, uno animo.
3. Otherwise it is a Noun, or Verb and made by them.
- [According.] 1. According to by ad, de, ex, pro, secundum.
2. According as by prout, proinde ut, sicut, pro eo ac ut.
3. Accordingly by juxta, pariter, perinde.
- [After.] 1. Before a Nominative Case by postquam, posteaquam, ubicum, or ut. Before an Oblique Case by a, ab, ex, post.
2. Following a Noun of time by post, but if a Verb follow by quam.
3. Following a Verb belongs to it and is omitted.
4. Sig. according to by de, ad. Or is the sign of the Ablative of the Manner.
5. Sig. nearness or degree, order, or succession by juxta, proxime secundum, sub.
- Sig. Afterwards, by postea, exinde.
- [Again.] 1. Sig. once more by iterum, denuo, rursus, abintegro.
2. Sig. on the other hand by è, contra, invicem, vicissim.
3. Sig. hereafter by post, posthac, postea.
4. Again and again by iterum or etiam with a Conjunction.
5. After Verbs or Sig. back again by retro or re in composition.
6. To and again by ultro, utraq; As big again by duplo major.
- [Against.] 1. Before a Noun of time by in with an Accusative.
2. Before a Verb with its Nominative Case by dum.
3. After a Verb of Motion by ad or in with an Accusative.
4. Before mind, thought, will, law, custom, right, just, good, &c. by præter.
5. Sig. damage or opposition, cross contrary to by adversus adversum, in, contra.
6. Sig.

6. Sig. defence or preservation by *a, ad, adversus, contra*.
7. Over against *eregione, ex adverso*.
8. To be against, *adversus, repugno*.
- [ *All* ] 1. Sig. whole by *totus, integer, universus*.
2. Sig. every one *singulus, quisque*.
3. Sig. only by *solus unus*.
4. Sig. as much as, so much as, how much soever, whatsoever, by *quantumcunque, quod, quicquid, quantum* or *quam* for *quantum*.
5. Sig. otherwise by *omnis, cunctus, universus*.
6. No, or none at all by *nullus, omnino*. Not at all, *non omnino, nequaquam, nullo modo*. Nothing at all, *nihil omnino, nihil, prorsus, nihil quicquam*. Never at all, *omnino nunquam*. No where at all, *omnino nusquam*.
- [ *Along* ] 1. With a person or a thing by *una*.
2. Otherwise it is made by *Per* or an Ablative Case; else it belongs to, or is included in the foregoing word.
- [ *Among* ] 1. Not having from before it by *inter, in, apud*.
2. After from by *e, ex*.
- [ *And* ] 1. Next before not, prohibiting an act following by *autem, vero*.
2. Sig. neither or a word coming between and not by *nec, neque, ac, &*.
3. Before yet or therefore, is included the Latine-word.
4. Before it by *si*, or *quod* sometimes tho' if be understood.
5. Between two active Verbs omit and make the first a Participle.
6. Otherwise by *ac, atq; &, nec non, quæ, tum*.
- [ *As* ] 1. Before a Verb or Participle in ing, with a Passive Sign. By a Verb with *dum, cum, ubi, ut, inter, super*. Or else by in with an Ablative.
2. Sig. which by *quod, id, quod, qui, quæ, quod*.
3. Sig. in this regard or respect by *ut, quia*.
4. Sig. like as, even as by *ut, sicut, velut, quo-modo, quem-ad-modum*.
5. Sig. according as by *ut, sicut, uti, ita, ut, pro, prout*.
6. Answering to such, or such an one by *qualis, qui*.
7. Answering to so, or as great as, as much as, as little as, &c. by *quantus, qui, quam* or *ut* with a Superlative.
8. Doubled with an Adjective or Adverb betwixt them and sig. tho', or altho' by *quamvis*. How much soever by *quantus-cunq;* How little soever by *quantus cunq;*
9. Found in the former part of a Sentence by *tam, non, minus, æque*. In the latter part by *quam*.
- [ *At* ] 1. Before time, price, manner, instrument, cause, games is commonly Sign of an Ablative Case.
2. Before in a place by in with an Ablative.
3. Before nigh, near, or close by a place by *ad, apud---pro, à, ab*.

4. Before places of the first or second Declension and Sing. by a Genitive. But of the third Declension, or the Plural Number by an Ablative.

5. Before a Participle in ing, if it can be varied by a Verb with when, or after that by a Verb with *cum* or *ubi*, or else an Ablative absolute.

6. To be at or present by *inter sum*, at supper *inter* or *super cœnam*.

7. Otherwise it belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted.

[ *Away.* ] 1. Sig. get you gone, or fie by *apage*, *apagite*.

2. Before with, to abide or endure by *fero*, *patior*.

3. After a Verb is part of it, and therefore is omitted.

4. Sig. hence, or from thence, belongs to the next word.

[ *Become.* ] 1. Sig. its meet, fit, or handsome by *debet*.

2. Sig. is made, or proves to be so by *fio evado*.

3. Before of by *fio*, *futurum est* with a Dative, or *de* with an Ablative.

[ *Before.* ] 1. Sig. before that by *ante quam*, *priusquam*.

2. Relating to time or place by *ante*. In presence by *coram*.

3. Sig. in comparison by *præ*. More than *plusquam*. Rather than *potiusquam*. Sooner than by *citiusquam*.

4. After written or spoken by, *supra*, *ante*, *prius*.

5. Sig. formerly by *olim*, *quondam*.

[ *Behind.* ] 1. Sig. place or site by *pone post*.

2. Sig. remaining, to be heard or done by *porro*, *reliquus*, *super sum*.

3. Sig. inferiority to, or shortness of by inferior with a Dative.

[ *Being.* ] 1. Sig. since that by *cum*, *quandoquidem*. As being *ut-pote*.

2. Sig. presence in a place by *præsentia*.

3. Sig. to abide, continue, dwell by *esse licet*.

4. Before to, with a Verb by a Participle in *rus*.

5. After far from, by *ut* with a Conjunctive Mood.

6. With a Verb or Participle by *quod* or *quia* many times.

7. Is often left out and the following word is made an Ablative absolute; or the same case with the foregoing word by *apposition*.

8. Just after near by *parum*, *quin*, *prope* & a Conjunctive.

9. Just after from, importing, let or hindrance by an Infinitive, Passive or a Conjunctive with *ne*.

[ *Beneath, Below.* ] 1. Before a casual word by *sub*, inferior.

2. Not having a casual word after it by *infra*, *subter*.

[ *Beside, Besides.* ] 1. Sig. by or near to by *prope*, *propter*, *juxta*, *secundum*.

2. Sig. except, save, or but, by *præter*, *extra*, *præterquam*.

3. Sig. moreover or furthermore by *porro*, *præterea*.

4. Sig. more than, over and above, by *præter*, *præterea*.

5. Sig. Beyond, above, by *ultra trans præter*.

[ *Beyond.* ] 1. Sig. on the further side by *trans*, *ultra*.

2. Sig. above by *præter*, *supra*, *extra*, *ultra*.

3. Sig.



3. Sig. to go beyond, or over reach by *circum venio, fallo.*
- [ *Both.* ] 1. Sig. two by *ambo, uterque.*
2. Answered by, and, by *cum, tum, &, vel,* and *qua* doubled.
- [ *But.* ] 1. After nothing, what, or what else by a Verb and *quam,* or a Noun or Pronoun with *quin, quod, non, nisi.*
2. After cannot by *non,* or *quin* with a Conjunctive.
3. After words of time by *cum.* After words of denying by *quin.*
4. After words, of not doubting, or questioning, not hearing and thinking, &c. by *quin* or *ne, non.*
5. Sig. only by *tantum, modo, solum modo.*
6. Sig. except by *nisi, præterquam.*
7. But for *absq;* But that *ni, nisi, quod, quodnisi.* Not but that *non, quodnon.*
- [ *By.* ] 1. Before the instrument wherewith, the manner how, and words of time is Sign of an Ablative.
2. Before words of place by an Ablative, or *per.*
3. Before Participles in *ing* is sign of a Gerund in *do.*
4. Before self, selves sig. alone by *per, solus.*
5. Sig. thro' or by means of by *per,* so in swearing and protestation.
6. Sig. before by *ante, priusquam.* Concerning by *de, ex.*
7. Sig. about by *circiter, sub, ad.*
8. Sig. near or nigh to by *prope, juxta, propter, ad, apud.*
9. Sig. from by *a, ab, abs, ex.* According to by *de, ex.*
10. Sig. evil, or indirect by *malus, sinister, inhonestus.*
11. After Comparatives is sign of an Ablative.
12. After Passive Verbs by *a, ab, abs,* or sign of the Dative.
13. Sign of an Adverb in *im* or *è* as; man by man *viratim* by stealth *furtim,* day by day *quoti-die.*
14. Belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted.
15. By reason of *per, ob, propter.* By and by *mox, brevi.* By the by *obiter.* By reason of that, or because, *quod, propterea.*
16. By the way, or not on set purpose *obiter, cursim, perfunctorie, leviter, intransitu.*
17. By the way or road in *via* in *itenere.*
- [ *Either.* ] 1. Sig. one of the two by *alteruter, utervis, uter, ater, libet.*
2. Sig. or by *aut, vel, &c.*
- [ *Else.* ] 1. Sig. other by *alius.* Otherwise by *alioqui, aliter, alius, ni, ita.*
2. Sig. more or further by *præterea, porro, ad huc, amplius.*
3. Sig. besides by *præterea* with *nemo.*
4. After or answering to either by *aut, vel.* To whether by *sive,* expressed or understood.
- [ *Even.* ] 1. Relating to number by *par.*
2. Sig. equal, or as big as by *æqualis, par.*
3. Sig. smooth, level, plain by *æquus, levis.*

4. Sig. namely by *nempe*, *nimirum*.
5. Sig. also by *etiam*, *quoque*, *vel*. Almost by *fere* *ferme*.
6. Before as by *quemadmodum*, *sicut*, &c.
7. Before from respecting time by *jam*, *inde*, *usq;* *a*, *ab*.
8. Before from respecting place by *usq;* *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*.
9. Expletive is omitted as ; is it even so *siccine*? It is even so *sic est*.  
[ *Ever.* ] 1. Sig. any and standing before a *oran* by *nunquid*, *ecquis*, *ecquidnam*.
2. Sig. at any time by *unquam*, *ecquando*, *siquando*.
3. Sig. always or continually by *semper*, *aeternum*, *jugiter*.
4. After as redoubled with an Adjective or Adverb by *quam* or *ut* with a Superlative.
5. After or, sig. before that by *cum*, *nondum*, *ut ut*, *antequam*.  
[ *Every.* ] 1. Sig. all by *omnis*, *universus*.
2. Sig. whole by *ad* as ; to a farthing *ad quadrantem*.
3. Sig. each one by *quisq;* *unusquisq;*.
4. Before words of time by *quot* with an Ablative as *quotannis*, or by *in* with an Accusative Plural as ; *in horas*.  
[ *Far.* ] 1. Before a Substantive by *longinquus*.
2. Before an Adjective or Adverb and after a Verb by *multo*, *longè*.
3. So far from that, by *ita*, *non*, *ut*, *adeo non*, *tantum ab-est* ; *ut* or *ne* in the former clause, and *nedum* in the latter.
4. As far as by *quod*, *quantum*, *quoad*. Before to by *usq;* *ad*. Before from by *ab usq;*.
5. So far that by *eo*, *eo usq;*. Far from, or far off from by *longè*, *procul*, *multum*.
6. Far Sig. without and from after it by *longè*. Far off, without from after it by *procul*.  
[ *For.* ] 1. Sig. instead or in behalf, according to, or considering by *pro*, *gratiâ*, *causâ*.
2. Sig. by reason of, for the sake of by *propter*, *ob*, *præ*, *ergo*.
3. Sig. as, by *in*, *pro* as ; for a sign *i. e.* as a sign in *signum*.
4. Sig. for all by *per*. For a time by *ad*, *in*, *as* ; for a day *in* or *ad diem*.
5. Sig. on ones side, or interest by *a*, *ab*, *pro*.
6. Sig. as for, by *de*, *quod*, *ad*, *quantum ad*.
7. Before a sentence inferring a reason by *nam*, *enim*, & *enim*, *quippe*.
8. Before descases sig. good against by *contra*, *ad*.
9. Before a person sig. for the use of it is a sign of a Dative Case.
10. Before words of price and wagers sign of an Ablative.
11. Before part by *pro*, *ex*.
12. Before a Participle in *ing* sig. because that by *quod* or *qui* with a Conjunctive but sig. to the end that by *causâ* and a Gerundive with its Genitive Case.
13. Before profit or honour by *e*, or *ex*.
14. Before distributives by *in* with an Accusative.

15. Before

15. Before purpose, use, end, &c. by *ad*, *in*, and an Accusative.
16. Before an Infinitive latter two Verbs its omitted.
17. Before a Case requiring an infinitive after it is omitted.
18. After good, fit, profitable, lawful, &c. sign of a Dative.

[ *From.* ] 1. Before a common place, word of time, age, or order by *a*, *ab* *abs.*

2. Before a Participle in *ing* by *a*, *ab*, or *ex* with a Gerund in *do*.
3. After a word of motion, and before the proper name of a small place sign of an Ablative without a Preposition.
4. After Verbs of differing and taking away sign of Dative or Ablative with *a*, *ab*, *abs.*

5. Joyn'd to off, or out by *de*, *e*, *ex*.

6. Often belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted.

[ *Here.* ] 1. Sig. in this place by *hic*.  
2. Compounding an English word sig. this and refers to time, place, thing, and is rendred as those Particles direct.

[ *Hence.* ] 1. Sig. from this place by *hic*.

2. Sig. the cause original of a thing by *hinc*, *ex hoc*.

3. After words of time by *ad*, *post*.

4. Henceforth by *post hac*, *quod superest*, *dein*, *porro*.

5. Henceforwards---by *deinceps*,----- *quod reliquum est*.

[ *His, hers, theirs, its.* ] 1. With own, and before a Substantive by *suus*.

2. Without own and before a Substantive by *ejus*, *illius*, *ipsius*.

[ *Him, her, them, it.* ] 1. Before self in the Nominative by *ipse*.  
In Oblique Cases by *sui*, *sibi*, *se*.

[ *Hither.* ] 1. Sig. towards this place by *horsum*.

2. Sig. to this place by *huc*. If it be an Adjective by *citerior*.

[ *Hitherto.* ] 1. Sig. to this time by *adhuc*, *usque adhuc*.

2. Sig. to this place, or bound, thus far by *hactenus*.

[ *How.* ] 1. Sig. in what manner by *quomodo*.

2. Before Adjectives, and Adverbs coming of them, and Verbs, with Admiration by *quam*.

3. Before much and a comparative degree by *quo*, *quanto*.

4. Sig. by what means by *qui*, *unde*.

5. Joyned with that, or put instead thereof by *quod*.

6. Sig. what, or why? By *quid*.

[ *How, far.* ] 1. Sig. in space or place by *quam longo*.

2. Sig. in going forwards by *quatenus*.

3. Sig. degree of excess or excellency by *quanto*.

4. How is it that, or why? by *quid*? *quare*? *cur*? *quid est cur*? *quid fit ut*.

5. How be it, by *at*, *tamen*, *attamen*, *veruntamen*, *autem*.

6. However by *ut ut*, *ut cumq;*

[ *if.* ] 1. In the former part of a Sentence by *si*. In the latter by *si*.



2. Sig. *whether* by *numsi*.
3. *If* not sig. *unless* by *ni*, *nisi*, *sinon*.
4. *If* not yet by *sinon*, *sinminus*.
5. *But if* not by *sin aliter*, *sin minus*.

[ *In.* ] 1. Before *to* by *in* with an Accusative Case, without *to* an Ablative.

2. Before *place* by *apud*, *ad*, *in*. Before *time* by *in*, *de*, *per*, *inter*, *inter*, *intra*.

3. Before words of price it is sign of an Ablative.

4. Sig. inward by *in situs*.

5. Belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted. In English Anglice. In Latin Latine. In Greek Græce.

[ *It.* ] 1. Before self by *ipse*. Before a Verb usually omitted.

2. After a Verb, or Præposition by *id*, *hoc*, *ist-hac*.

[ *Last.* ] 1. Sig. time by *postremus*.

2. Sig. order or place by *novissimus*, *extremus*, *ultimus*, *supremus*, *summus*, or Adverbs coming of them.

3. Sig. to continue by *perenno*, *duro*.

4. A shoe last *modulus*, *crepida*.

5. At last *jam*, *tandem*, *demum*, *aliquando*, *deniq;* *ad extremum*.

[ *Let.* ] 1. Sig. to hire for rent or use by *loco*, *eloco*.

2. Sig. alone, or to leave of, or pass by *mitto*, *omitto*.

3. Sig. to give leave, or to suffer by *permitto*, *sino*.

4. Sig. to hinder by *obsto*, *impedio*.

5. Sig. delay or hindrance by *mora*, *impedimentum*.

6. Before another Verb it is sign of an Imperative Mood. *Let* is also sign of the first person of the Conjunctive Mood.

[ *Like.* ] 1. Being an Adjective by *par*, *similis*, *æquus*.

2. Being a Verb by *probo*, *gaudeo*, *cordi est*.

3. Sig. likelihood or probability by *verisimile*, *probabile*.

4. Sig. manner, way, or fashion by some such Adverb.

5. Like as, in like sort, in like manner by *quem-ad-modum*, *sicut*, *pariter ac*, *perinde ac*, *hujus modi*.

[ *Little.* ] 1. Before a Substantive by *parvus*, *exiguus*.

2. Before a Substantive is a Diminutive as; *agellus*, *puellula*.

3. Before an Adjective positive by *aliquantum*, *non nihil*.

4. Before a Comparative by *aliquanto*, *paulo*.

5. Before a Verb by *paulum*, *parum*, *non nihil*, *aliquantum*.

6. Before words sig. time by *parumper*, *paulisper*.

[ *Less.* ] 1. With a Substantive by *minor*.

2. With a Verb or after *no*, *nothing*, *much*, *little*, *never the*, &c. By the Adverb *minus*.

3. Being part of a Verb as; to make less by *minuo*, *extenuo*.

[ *Least.* ] 1. Referring to a Substantive by *minimus*. To a Verb by *minime*.

2. After *at* or *the* by *minimum* or *minime* least that by *ne*.

[ *Long.* ]

- [ *Long.* ] 1. Being an Adjective *by* longus. An Adverb *by* diu.  
 2. Sig. to desire greatly *by* percupio, ex peto.  
 3. After all ( something between ) *by* totus, omnis.  
 4. Sig. fault *by* culpa. A good cause *by* causa.

- [ *Man.* ] 1. No child, or coward *by* vir. No woman *by* mas, vir.  
 2. Sign servant *by* servus, famulus.  
 3. Is oft understood in Latin after Adjectives?  
 4. Any man *by* quis, aliquis. Every man, quisque, omnis unusquisq;

No man nemo.

- [ *Much.* ] 1. Being an Adjective *by* multus, plurimus.  
 2. With a Verb *by* multum, magnopere, vehementer.  
 3. Sig. value, price or concernment *by* tanti, quanti, hujus, magni, permagni, maximi, plurimi.  
 4. Before comparat. and superlat. *by* multo, longè.  
 5. How much *by* quo, quanto. So much, tanto, hoc eo.  
 6. Belongs to the foregoing word, and is omitted.

- [ *More.* ] 1. Proceeding from much *by* major, plus with a Genitive.

2. Proceeding from many *by* plures, & plura.  
 3. Before an Adjective or Adverb is sign of a comparat.  
 4. With Verbs of esteeming, valuing, buying, selling *by* pluris.  
 5. Sig. rather *by* magis. Hereafter *by* post-hac.  
 6. Sig. further *by* amplius, ultra.  
 7. Sig. Else or besides *by* præterea, amplius.  
 8. Sig. above *by* plus, amplius, magis, supra, super.  
 9. More greatly *by* plus, magis.  
 10. The more in the former part of a sentence *by* quo, quanto. In the latter *by* tanto, eo. And so the following answer each other quot tot, quoties toties, qualis talis, quantum tantum quantopere tantopere.

- [ *Most.* ] 1. With an Adjective or Adverb sign of the Superlat.  
 2. With a Substantive *by* plerique.  
 3. With a Verb *by* maxime, plurimum.

- [ *Must.* ] 1. Sig. necessity *by* necesse est.  
 2. Sig. need *by* opus est. Sig. duty *by* oportet.

- [ *Near.* ] 1. Being an Adjective *by* propinquus.  
 2. Sig. almost *by* prope.

3. Belongs to the next Verb. Near to---unto *by* prope juxta proper.

- [ *Next.* ] 1. Being an Adjective *by* proximus.  
 2. Sig. order before a Case *by* juxta, secundum, post without a Case *by* deinde, deinceps.  
 3. Sig. time *by* posterus or some Adverb. Place *by* vicinus.

- [ *Neither.* ] 1. Of the two *by* neuter. Answered *by* nor, *by* nec, neve, neq;

- [ *Never.* ] Sig. no, none, not *by* nullus, non unus, non ullus.

2. Sig.

2. Sig. at no time *by* nunquam, non unquam.
3. With the before a Comparative *by* nihilo.
4. Being a note of forbidding *by* ne.
5. Never so---such *by* vel, ut, quamvis, quamlibet, etiam si.
- [ *No.* ] 1. Without a causal word *by* ne, non.
2. Next before a Substantive *by* nullus, nequis, nihil, nequid.
3. Before an Adjective and Substantive *by* non, haud.
4. No person *by* nemo, nullus, nequis, non quisquam.
5. No more *by* non plus, non amplius, ne quid ultra, nihil amplius.
- [ *Not.* ] 1. Sig. denying *by* non, haud, minus, nec, neque.
2. Sig. forbidding *by* non with a future Tense Indicative, ne with Imperative, or Conjunctive, and noli with an Infinitive.
3. After words of caution, or warning *by* ne with a Conjunct.
4. After words intreating deprecating *by* ne or ut and a Conjunct.
5. After Verbs of fearing *by* ut, ne, non and a Conjunctive.
6. In questions *by* non, nonne, annon or que the Enclitick and a Conjunctive Mood.
- [ *Now.* ] 1. Sig. time present *by* nunc. Newly past *by* modo. Instantly *by* jam.
2. Importing connexion *by* autem jam. Transition *by* deinceps.
- [ *Of.* ] 1. Sig. concerning, touching *by* de, super.
2. Sig. out whereof, or matter *by* de, e, ex.
3. Sig. with, or by it is sign of a Gerund in do.
4. Sig. from, or by, after Passives *by* a, ab, abs.
5. Before the latter two Substantives sign of a Genitive Case.
6. Before a Participle in *ing*, sign of a Gerund in di.
7. After Nouns sig. desire knowledg, remembrance, ignorance, forgetting, care, fear, and their contraries, with other affections of the mind. Also many Participials, and all Verbals in *ax*. Likewise Partitives, Comparatives, and Superlatives put Partitively. And after Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, purging, acquiting, and pœnetet, piget, pudet, tædet it is sign of a Genitive Case.
8. After Nouns and Verbs, of plenty, or wanting, filling, or emptying, spoiling, or disappointing, joy, pride and the like. Also after worthy, unworthy, born, descended, planted, proceeded, published, come, created and need is a sign of an Ablative Case.
9. After a Substantive, and before mine, thine, ours, yours, his, theirs it is omitted as, a friend of mine amicus meus.
10. After most Verbs especially of hearing, or inquiring *by* a, ab, e, ex, de.
11. What kind or manner of *by* qui, qualis.
- [ *On, or upon.* ] 1. Before words of place sig. besides, near to, toward which *by* a, ab, ad.
2. Before words of place sig. above *by* super with an Ablative.
3. Before words of time, musical Instruments, words sig. food, and terms, or condition, &c. it is sign of an Ablative Case.

4. After



4. After Verbs of depending by *a, ab, de, e, ex*.
5. After Verbs of bestowing, spending, imploying, washing, loosing by in with an Accusative.
6. After *miserer, miseresco* is sign of a Genitive Case.
7. Sig. after *by Super*. It is omitted when included in the next word.
- [Or] 1. Put alone or sig. correction in a latter clause by *ve, seu, five*.
2. Answering whether, by *an, ne, seu, five*. Either by *aut, vel*.
- [Over.] 1. Sig. beyond by *ultra*. Above by *super, supra*. In comparison *præ*.
2. Sig. cross or overthwart by *trans*. After or within by *post, intra*.
3. Sig. concerning by *de super*. Sig. too, or too much by *nimis, nimius, nimium*.
4. After a Noun of rule, power, command by in and an Accusative.
5. After a Verb is sign of a Datives Case.
6. After Verbs of motion by *per, trans*.
7. Belongs to the next word and omitted.
8. All over by *per* or an Ablative Case.
- [Ought, must.] 1. By *oportet, debeo*, or a Gerund in *dum* with *est*.
2. Ought sig. any thing by *quid, exquid, siquid, res*.
3. For ought by *quantum*.
- [Out.] 1. Sig. from place or number by *de, e, ex*. Not within by *extra*.
2. Sig. away, or of from by *a, ab*. Belonging to the foregoing word is omitted.
3. Out of Sig. By reason of by *propter*.
- [Own.] 1. By *suus, proprius*. Own self by *ipse*.
- [Self.] 1. After a Pronoun my, your, him, &c. by *ipse*.
2. Before same by *ipse* with *ille, iste, hic, is, qui, idem* alone or with *ille, iste, quod, unus*.
- [Since.] 1. Sig. seeing that, or because by *cum, quando, siquidem, quando, quidem*.
2. Sig. from, or after by *a, ab, ex, post, ut, quod, cum, postquam*.
3. Sig. ago by *abhinc, ante, diu, dudum, olim, pridem*.
- [So.] 1. In a former clause and answered by *as*, or that in the latter by *tam, adeo, perinde, sic, ita*.
2. In a latter clause, and answering to *as* in a former by *sic, ita*.
3. Sig. this, that, or the same by *id, idem*.
4. So many by *tot*. So often *toties*. So much, so great by *tantus*, of that by *modo, dum, dum-modo*.

5. Before over *by cunq;* an *Encliteir*, or doubling the word it self as; howsoever *ut-cunq;* or *ut-ut.*

[ *Such.* ] 1. Sig. kind, sort, or quality *by talis, or is, qualis, ejusmodi.*

2. Sig. nature, disposition, or condition *by sic, ita.*

3. So great *by tantus, ita, magnus.*

4. Sig. this, that, they, or those, denoting quality *by hic, is.*

5. Such a, before a Noun *by tam, a-deo.*

[ *That* ] 1. Before a Substantive *by ille, is, iste.*

2. After words of opinion, knowledge, relation, or complaint *by quod.*

3. After same *by qui, ac, atq;*

4. After words of care, endeavour, desire, intreaty, wishing, warning, counselling, commanding, obtaining, happening, permitting and affecting *by ut*, which is elegantly omitted after *censeo, facio, jubeo, peto, sino, volo.*

5. After so, or such *by ut.*

6. After words of fear in affirmative speeches *by ne* in negative *by ut, ne, non.*

7. Sig. which, who, *by qui or quis.*

8. Sig. to the end that, or set before may, can, might, could, should, ought *by ut.*

9. Sig. because, or put with it *by quod.*

10. Sig. Something to be done *by quod.*

11. Placed betwixt a Comparative, and a Verb is omitted.

12. Before that, *antequam, priusquam;* After that *postquam, posteaquam.*

[ *Than.* ] 1. After Comparatives and before a Noun is sign of an Ablative, but before another word *by quam.*

2. After other, or otherwise *by ac, atq; quam.*

[ *Then.* ] 1. Sig. at that time *by tunc, tum.*

3. Sig. next, or after that *by tum, deinde.*

3. Sig. therefore, or so then *by ergo, igitur, tum-postea, tum-porro.*

[ *Thence.* ] 1. Sig. from that place *by illinc, inde, istinc.*

2. Sig. from that cause, occasion, or ground *by ex-eo, inde, exinde.*

[ *There.* ] 1. Sig. in that place *by ibi, istic, illic.*

2. When there is sign of the Verb, as its Nominative Case it is omitted.

3. Being compounded with about, after, at, by, from, in, into, of, on, out, upon, to, unto, with, without, &c. *by is, iste.*

[ *The.* ] 1. Before a Comparative, sig. by how much *by quo, quanto.* Sig. by so much *by eo, tanto.*

2. 'Tis omitted in words of distinction, restriction and eminency.

[ *Though.* ]

[ *Though.* ] 1. Without as by *ut, licet, si, etsi, tametsi, tamenetsi, etiamsi, cum, quanquam, quamvis.*

2. With as by *quasi, perindequasi, tanquam, ut, quasi, vero, &c.*

[ *Through.* ] 1. Sig. place by *per.* Cause, or occasion by *ex, per, propter.*

[ *Till, untill,* ] 1. Before a Noun by *in, usque, ad,* Adverb, by *dum, donec, quoad.*

2. Sig. before a by *ante,* and a Noun of time.

3. Sig. before a by *antequam, anteaquam,* and a Verb.

4. Sig. to allure, or draw on by *lacto, allicio.*

5. Sig. to plow or order land by *colo.*

[ *To.* ] 1. Before a casual word and sig. to the use of is sign of a Dative, sig. in comparison of by *ad, præ.* Sig. towards by *in, erga, adversum.* Sig. of, or concerning by *ad, de.*

2. Before a casual word of time, sig. untill by *in, ad.*

3. Before a casual word of that person, to, or before, whom any person, or thing is complained, accused, condemned, or spoken of by *apud.*

4. Before a casual word, and after words of motion, or Verbs, sig. to apply, add, appertain, belong, call, exhort, provoke, or incite, and Adjectives of forwardness, readiness, fitness and inclinableness by *ac.*

5. Sig. according by *ad, de, ex, secundum, pro.*

6. Before a Verb is sign of the Infinitive Mood, yet may be rendered after, any Noun by the Gerund in *dum* with *ad,* or a Passive sign when necessity or duty is sig. by a Gerund in *dum.* When purpose, or likelihood is sig. by a Participle in *rus.* After Adjectives of worthiness, fitness, &c. and Substantives that may be varied by who or which, with may, can, &c. by *qui* and a Conjunctive Mood.

[ *To be.* ] 1. After a Passive sign, or noun, or verb substantive by a Participle in *dus.*

2. After an Adjective, latter Supine, or a Conjunctive by *qui.*

3. After any other Verbs, or an Accusative by the Infinitive Passive.

4. Without a sign, alone, or before a Noun, or Preposition in the same clause by *esse, or ut, or qui* with *sum.*

[ *Together.* ] 1. After words of time by *per.*

2. After words of gathering, or uniting together by *con* in composition.

3. Sig. Company, at the same time, or place by *una, simul, inter.*

[ *Too.* ] 1. Sig. also by *etiam, quoque.*

2. Sig. over before an Adjective, or Adverb by *nimis, nimium.*

3. Sig. sometimes by the Comparative degree and *quam, qui, ut.*

[ *Toward.* ]



[Towards.] 1. Sig. to, noting favour, duty, reverence by *in*, *ad*, *erga*, *versus*.

2. Sig. prospect, or motion towards a place by *ad*, *in*, *versus*.

3. Sig. nearness in time by *sub*. In situation or place by *a*.

[Very] 1. Before a Substantive sig. meer, true, pure by *merus*, *verus*, *purus*.

2. Before a Substantive sig. even by *vel*, *etiam*.

3. Before a Substantive sig. himself, it self, themselves by *ipse*.

4. Before an Adjective or Adverb by *multum*, *valde*, *admodum*, *apprime*.

[Under.] 1. Sig. place, below or beneath by *sub*.

2. Sig. government, or time of government, by *sub*. and *ablat*.

3. Sig. dignity, honour, order, degree by *intra*.

4. Sig. colour, shew, pretence by *per*. and an accusative or substantive and an ablative.

5. Sig. number, short of, not so many, fewer than, by *infra*, *minor*, *minus*.

[Up.] 1. Sig. as far as to by *tenus*, *usque*, *ad*.

2. With a verb or verbal is included in the *Latine*.

[What.] 1. Sig. that, which, by *quod*. After contrary to by *contra*, *ac*, *atq*; *quam*.

2. Sig. to what pass, end, or purpose by *quorsum*.

3. Sig. partly by *qua*. Sig. how by *quam*.

4. Before a Substantive, on which it depends by *qui*, *quis*, *qualis*.

5. Being an Interrogatory, or without a Substantive by *quid*.

[When.] 1. Sig. at what time, or at the time that by *quum*, *ubi*, *quando*.

2. Sig. while, or whilst that by *in*, *inter*, *cum*.

3. Sig. after that, or as soon as, by *ubi*, *tum*, *ut*, *postquam*.

4. Used in a question by *quando*?

[Whence.] 1. Sig. coming and proceeding from by *ex*, *quo*.

2. Sig. from what place interrogatively by *unde*?

[Where.] 1. Sig. in what or which place interrogatively by *ubi*?

2. Sig. any thing begun by *unde*.

3. Sig. by what, or which place. or way by *qua*.

4. Being compounded with at, by, from, in, on, to, upon, with, &c. is the same with at which, by which or what, &c. and is made by *quis*, *qui*.

5. Any where *usquam*, *uspiam*, no where *nusquam*, *nuspiam*. Some where *alicubi*.

[Whether.]

[ *Whether.* ] 1. In the former clause, and answer'd by or in the latter by *seu, five.*

2. Sig. which of the two by *uter.*

3. Sig. to what or to which place by *quo.*

4. Sig. whether or no, of asking or doubting by *ne, utrum, num,* *ansi.*

[ *Which.* ] 1. Being a Relative by *qui.* Being a Question by *quis.*

2. Sig. whether of the number by *uter.*

[ *While.* ] 1. Alone, or after great, little, by *parumper, paulisper, aliquantisper, diu.*

2. While before go or time is made by *dudum.*

3. Sig. in the mean time or space that by *dudum.*

4. Sig. so long as by *dum, quoad.*

5. Sig. until, so long till, by *dum, donec, tantisper, dum.*

[ *Who, why.* ] 1. In a question by *quis.* A Relative by *qui.* Indefinite by *qui, quis.* What-when-where before-soever by *quod-quando-ubi-cunque.*

[ *Why.* ] 1. Interrogatively put by *cur, quare, quid, quidni, quamobrem, quâ causâ, quâ, ratione, qui, quin, quidum, quâ-propter?*

2. Sig. which or what cause by *quod, qui, cur, &c.*

3. Sig. expletively by *at, vero, etiam, quin.*

[ *With.* ] 1. Before the instrument, or manner, answering the question why? wherewith? how? It is sign of an Ablative Case.

2. Before words ending in *est* by a Positive with *nimum,* or a Comparative with *æquo,* or *quam* and *decet.*

3. Before a person with reference to a place where one is, or to some power with him by *apud, ad, penes.*

4. After Verbs of comparing, contending, meeting, and being angry is sign of a Dative Case.

5. After Verbs of begining sig. *at,* or from by *à* or *ab.*

6. Sig. company, or together with by *cum* which is set after *me, te, se, qui, quibus, nobis, vobis--- cum.*

[ *Within.* ] 1. Before a word of place by *intra,* or *intus,* if the place be understood.

2. Before a word of time by *cis, in, citra.*

[ *Without.* ] 1. Sig. not within by *foris, extra.*

2. Sig. not with, by *sine, extra, citra.* Or by a Verb sig. to be void as; *vaco, careo.* Or by a word compounded with *ex,* and *in* for *non.* Or by a word of contrary, signification to that which follows without. Or by negative Particles coming together with Nouns, Participles, or Adverbs.

3. Sig. unless or except by *nisi.*

[ *Worth.* ] 1. Sig. dignity or authority by *dignitas, auctoritas*.

2. Sig. price or value by a Verb of esteeming and a Genitive.

3. Worth ones-labour-pains-care-while by *operæ-curæ-prætiū*.

[ *Ret.* ] 1. Answering to although, and after but. And sig. notwithstanding, or for all that by *at, certe, tamen, attamen, veruntamen*.

2. Sig. correction by *quanquam, etsi, tametsi*.

3. Sig. thither, or to this time by *adhuc* in affirmative speeches. In negative ones with not, nothing, scarcely, hardly by *nondum, necdum, nihildum, nequedum, vixdum, hauddum*.

4. Sig. still, or at this time by *adhuc, etiam-num, etiam-nunc*.

5. Sig. more or joyn'd with it that is further by *adhuc, etiam*.

[ *You, yours.* ] 1. directed to one person by *tu, tuus*, to more than one by *vos, vester*.

2. Your is made by *tibi* for *tuus*. And my by *mihi* for *meus* elegantly.

*Frustra fit per plura quod fieri potest per pauciora.*

## ADVERTISEMENT.

THE Authors distance from the Press, has occasion'd several Indecencies in the Printing, viz. in the Pointing, and Differencing of the Character in many Places, which required such Distinction, which the Reader is therefore desired to NOTE.



---

# B O O K S

*Printed, and Sold by H. Walwyn at the  
Three Leggs in the Poultry over against  
the Stocks-Market.*

**T**H E Works of the Reverend and Learned Mr. *Charnock*, Fol.  
Geography Rectifi'd or a Discription of the World in all it's  
Parts, by *Robert Morden*, 4to.

Sermons on several Occasions by Dr. *John Conant*, publish'd by the  
Bishop of *Chichester*.

An Exposition of the Church Catechism, by *John Lord* Bishop of  
*Chichester*.

A Sermon Preach'd at the Funeral of Dr. *Fekyl*, by *John Lord*  
Bishop of *Chichester*.

Gradus ad Parnassum five Novus Synonymorum Epithetorum  
Phrasium poeticarum, &c. ab uno è Societate Jesu Editio Novissi-  
ma in usum Scholarum.

Eutropij Historiæ Romanæ Breviarum ab urbe condita usq; ad  
Valentinianum & Valentem Augustos, &c.

Helvici Colloquia.

Posing of the Parts.

English Exercise for School Boys to Translate into Latin, Com-  
prizing all the Rules of Grammer, and other necessary Obser-  
vations, ascending gradually from the Meanest to the Higher  
Capacities, by *John Garretson* School-master, the 7th Edition.

*Bates* Harmony of the Divine Attributes.

*Blanchards* Physical Dictionary.

*Gibsons* Anatomy of Humane Bodies.

*Hornecks* Great Law of Consideration

*Hornecks* Sermons,

By Bishop *Wilkins* of the Gift of Prayer.

BOORS Printed and Sold by H. Walwyn.

The Last Sermon of Mr. Joseph Stephens, late Lecturer of St. Giles's Cripplegate, St. Margaret's Lothbury, and St. Michael's Wood-street. Together with, 1. Sermon composed by him a little before his Death, ( but never Preached, being prevented by his last sickness, 2. A Sermon concerning the Hopes of the Righteous at Death. 3. A Sermon on Jam. iv. verse 17th; *Therefore to him that knoweth to do good, and doth it not, to him it is sin.*

Lately preached at the said Lectures. All publish'd from his own Manuscript Copies, fairly Written out for the Press by himself.

---

## ADVERTISEMENT.

**T**HERE will speedily be Published, a Guide to the Altar, or Instruction how to Pray unto God in an acceptable Manner, being a Practical Exposition on the Lords Prayer in several Sermons, by Mr. Joseph Stephens, late Lecturer at St. Giles's Cripplegate, S. Margarets Lothbury, and S. Michael's Wood-street, very Necessary for all Persons and Families.

FINIS.

